

PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD  
Form 20-F  
November 30, 2018

---

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
WASHINGTON, D.C. 20549**

**FORM 20-F**

**REGISTRATION STATEMENT PURSUANT TO SECTION 12(b) OR (g) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**OR**

**ANNUAL REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**For the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018**

**OR**

**TRANSITION REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**For the transition period from \_\_\_\_\_ to \_\_\_\_\_**

**OR**

**SHELL COMPANY REPORT PURSUANT TO SECTION 13 OR 15(d) OF THE SECURITIES EXCHANGE ACT OF 1934**

**Date of event requiring this shell company report \_\_\_\_\_**

**Commission file number: 001-33562**

**Platinum Group Metals Ltd.**

(Exact name of Registrant as specified in its charter)

**British Columbia**

(Jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

**Bentall Tower 5**

**Suite 788 550 Burrard Street**

**Vancouver, British Columbia**

**Canada V6C 2B5**

(Address of principal executive offices)

**Frank R. Hallam**

**Telephone: (604) 899-5450**

**Facsimile: (604) 484-4710**

**Platinum Group Metals Ltd.**

**Bentall Tower 5**

**Suite 788 550 Burrard Street**

**Vancouver, British Columbia**

**Canada V6C 2B5**

(Name, Telephone, E-Mail and/or Facsimile number and Address of Company Contact Person)

---

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(b) of the Act:

Title of each class	Name of each exchange on which registered
Common Shares, no par value	NYSE American

Securities registered or to be registered pursuant to Section 12(g) of the Act: None

Securities for which there is a reporting obligation pursuant to Section 15(d) of the Act: None

Indicate the number of outstanding shares of each of the issuer's classes of capital or common stock as of the close of the period covered by the annual report: 291,034,110 common shares

Indicate by check mark if the registrant is a well-known seasoned issuer, as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act. Yes  No

If this report is an annual or transition report, indicate by check mark if the registrant is not required to file reports pursuant to Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant (1) has filed all reports required to be filed by Section 13 or 15(d) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 during the preceding 12 months (or such shorter period that the registrant was required to file such reports), and (2) has been subject to such filing requirements for the past 90 days. Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant has submitted electronically every Interactive Data File required to be submitted pursuant to Rule 405 of Regulation S-T (§232.405 of this chapter) during the preceding 12 months (or for such shorter period that the registrant was required to submit and post such files). Yes  No

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or an emerging growth company. See the definition of large accelerated filer, accelerated filer, and emerging growth company in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer  Accelerated filer  Non-accelerated filer  Emerging growth company

If an emerging growth company that prepares its financial statements in accordance with U.S. GAAP, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to Section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

The term new or revised financial accounting standard refers to any update issued by the Financial Accounting Standards Board to its Accounting Standards Codification after April 5, 2012.

Indicate by check mark which basis of accounting the registrant has used to prepare the financial statements included in this filing:

---

U.S. GAAP  International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board  Other

If Other has been checked in response to previous question, indicate by check mark which financial statement item the registrant has elected to follow. Item 17  Item 18

If this is an annual report, indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a shell company (as defined in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act). Yes  No

---

## TABLE OF CONTENTS

<u>INTRODUCTION</u>	<u>6</u>
<u>GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS</u>	<u>14</u>
<u>PART I</u>	<u>16</u>
<u>ITEM 1. IDENTITY OF DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND ADVISERS</u>	<u>16</u>
<u>ITEM 2. OFFER STATISTICS AND EXPECTED TIMETABLE</u>	<u>16</u>
<u>ITEM 3. KEY INFORMATION</u>	<u>16</u>
<u>ITEM 4. INFORMATION ON THE COMPANY</u>	<u>46</u>
<u>ITEM 4A. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS</u>	<u>93</u>
<u>ITEM 5. OPERATING AND FINANCIAL REVIEW AND PROSPECTS</u>	<u>93</u>
<u>ITEM 6. DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND EMPLOYEES</u>	<u>108</u>
<u>ITEM 7. MAJOR SHAREHOLDERS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS</u>	<u>129</u>
<u>ITEM 8. FINANCIAL INFORMATION</u>	<u>132</u>
<u>ITEM 9. THE OFFER AND LISTING</u>	<u>133</u>
<u>ITEM 10. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION</u>	<u>135</u>
<u>ITEM 11. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK</u>	<u>153</u>
<u>ITEM 12. DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES OTHER THAN EQUITY SECURITIES</u>	<u>153</u>
<u>PART II</u>	<u>154</u>
<u>ITEM 13. DEFAULTS, DIVIDEND ARREARAGES AND DELINQUENCIES</u>	<u>154</u>
<u>ITEM 14. MATERIAL MODIFICATIONS TO THE RIGHTS OF SECURITY HOLDERS AND USE OF PROCEEDS</u>	<u>154</u>
<u>ITEM 15. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES</u>	<u>154</u>
<u>ITEM 16A. AUDIT COMMITTEE FINANCIAL EXPERT</u>	<u>155</u>
<u>ITEM 16B. CODE OF ETHICS</u>	<u>155</u>
<u>ITEM 16C. PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES</u>	<u>155</u>

<u>ITEM 16D.</u>	<u>EXEMPTIONS FROM THE LISTING STANDARDS FOR AUDIT COMMITTEES</u>	<u>156</u>
<u>ITEM 16E.</u>	<u>PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES BY THE ISSUER AND AFFILIATED PURCHASERS</u>	<u>156</u>
<u>ITEM 16F.</u>	<u>CHANGE IN REGISTRANT'S CERTIFYING ACCOUNTANT</u>	<u>156</u>
<u>ITEM 16G.</u>	<u>CORPORATE GOVERNANCE</u>	<u>156</u>
<u>ITEM 16H.</u>	<u>MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURE</u>	<u>157</u>
<u>PART III</u>		<u>158</u>
<u>ITEM 17.</u>	<u>FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</u>	<u>158</u>

---

<u>ITEM 18.</u>	<u>FINANCIAL STATEMENTS</u>	<u>158</u>
<u>ITEM 19.</u>	<u>EXHIBITS</u>	<u>159</u>
<u>SIGNATURES</u>		<u>160</u>
<u>EXHIBIT</u>		<u>161</u>
<u>INDEX</u>		

---

## INTRODUCTION

The information contained in this annual report on Form 20-F for the year ended August 31, 2018 (the **Annual Report**) of Platinum Group Metals Inc. (the “**Company**” or “**Platinum Group**”) is current as of November 29, 2018, except where a different date is specified.

Financial information is presented in accordance with the Handbook of the Canadian Institute of Chartered Accountants, in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards ( **IFRS** ), as issued by International Accounting Standards Board ( **IASB** ), applicable to the preparation of consolidated financial statements and in accordance with accounting policies based on IFRS standards and International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee ( **IFRIC** ) interpretations.

For further information please refer to Note 2 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

### **Currency and Foreign Exchange Rates**

All monetary amounts set forth in this Annual Report are expressed in United States Dollars ( **USD** ), except where otherwise indicated. The Company’s accounts are based on a Canadian Dollar ( **CDN** or **C\$** or **CAD** ) and are reported in a USD presentation currency. The Company’s South African subsidiaries use the South African Rand ( **Rand** or **R** or **ZAR** ) as a functional currency.

The following table sets forth the rate of exchange for the USD expressed in CAD in effect at the end of the periods indicated, the average of exchange rates in effect on the last day of each month during such periods, and the high and low exchange rates during such periods based on the posted Bank of Canada exchange rates.

Canadian Dollars as expressed in U.S. Dollars	Year Ended August 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Rate at end of period	\$1.3055	\$1.2536	\$1.3116
Average rate for period	\$1.2776	\$1.3212	\$1.3261
High for period	\$1.3310	\$1.4559	\$1.3743
Low for period	\$1.2128	\$1.2536	\$1.2447

The daily average exchange rate on November 29, 2018 as reported by the Bank of Canada for the conversion of USD into CDN was \$1.00 equals C\$1.3275.

The following table sets forth the rate of exchange for the USD expressed in Rand in effect at the end of the periods indicated, the average of exchange rates in effect on the last day of each month during such periods, and the high and low exchange rates during such periods based on the posted rates by The Federal Reserve of New York.

---



South African Rand as expressed in U.S. Dollars	Year Ended August 31,		
	2018	2017	2016
Rate at end of period	R14.6883	R13.0190	R14.6958
Average rate for period	R12.9572	R13.4711	R14.6911
High for period	R14.7841	R16.8406	R14.6720
Low for period	R11.5584	R13.0228	R12.4525

The daily average exchange rate on November 23, 2018 as reported by the Federal Reserve of New York for the conversion of USD into Rand was \$1.00 equals R13.85.

### Share Consolidation

On January 28, 2016, the Company's common shares ("Common Shares" or "Common Stock") were consolidated on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10) (the 2016 Share Consolidation). All information in this Annual Report regarding the issued and outstanding Common Shares, options and weighted average number and per share information has been retrospectively restated to reflect the 2016 Share Consolidation.

On November 20, 2018, the Company announced its intention to further consolidate the Company's Common Shares on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10), effective at 9:00 a.m. (New York time) on December 13, 2018 (the Effective Time). The Company's consolidated Common Shares are expected to begin trading on the Toronto Stock Exchange and NYSE American when the markets open on December 17, 2018. The purpose of the consolidation is to increase the Company's common share price to be in compliance with the NYSE American's low selling price requirement.

Each ten (10) Common Shares issued and outstanding at the Effective Time will automatically be reclassified, without any action of the holder thereof, into one common share. The share consolidation will affect all of the Company's Common Shares outstanding at the Effective Time. No fractional shares will be issued as a result of the share consolidation. Fractional interests of 0.5 or greater will be rounded up to the nearest whole number of shares and fractional interests of less than 0.5 will be rounded down to the nearest whole number of shares, in accordance with the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia).

The conversion rate of the Company's convertible senior subordinated notes, the exercise prices of the Company's outstanding options and warrants, and the number of Common Shares for which such securities are exercisable will be appropriately adjusted to give effect to the 2018 Share Consolidation, in accordance with the terms of their governing instruments.

As at the date of filing of this Annual Report, the 2018 Share Consolidation has not become effective. Unless otherwise indicated, all information included in this Annual Report, including, without limitation, all share and per share amounts, trading and per share prices, note conversion rates and option and warrant exercise prices, is presented prior to giving effect to the 2018 Share Consolidation.

**Units of Conversion**

The following table sets forth certain standard conversions from the International System of Units (metric units) to the Standard Imperial Units:

**Conversion Table**

<b>Metric</b>	<b>Imperial</b>
1.0 millimetre (mm) =	0.039 inches (in)
1.0 metre (m) =	3.28 feet (ft)
1.0 kilometre (km) =	0.621 miles (mi)
1.0 hectare (ha) =	2.471 acres (ac)
1.0 gram (g) =	0.032 troy ounces (oz)
1.0 metric tonne (t) =	1.102 short tons (ton)
1.0 g/t =	0.029 oz/ton

**Forward-Looking Statements**

This Annual Report and the documents incorporated by reference herein contain forward-looking statements within the meaning of the United States Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 and forward-looking information within the meaning of applicable Canadian securities legislation (collectively, Forward-Looking Statements). All statements, other than statements of historical fact, that address activities, events or developments that the Company believes, expects or anticipates will, may, could or might occur in the future are Forward-Looking Statements. The words expect, anticipate, estimate, may, could, might, will, would, should, intend, believe, strategy, goals, objectives, projection or the negative of any of these words and similar expressions are intended to identify Forward-Looking Statements, although these words may not be present in all Forward-Looking Statements. Forward-Looking Statements included or incorporated by reference in this Annual Report include, without limitation, statements with respect to:

the timely realization of proceeds from the Share Transaction (as defined below) component of the Maseve Sale Transaction (as defined below);

the 2018 Share Consolidation;

the repayment, and compliance with the terms of, indebtedness;

any potential exercise by Impala Platinum Holdings Ltd. (“**Implats**”) of the Purchase and Development Option (as defined below);

the completion of the DFS (defined below) and the approval of a mining right for, and other developments related to, the Waterberg Project (defined below);

the adequacy of capital, financing needs and the availability of and potential for obtaining further capital;

cash flow estimates and assumptions;

future events or future performance;

governmental and securities exchange laws, rules, regulations, orders, consents, decrees, provisions, charters, frameworks, schemes and regimes, including interpretations of and compliance with the same;

developments in South African politics and laws relating to the mining industry;

anticipated exploration, development, construction, production, permitting and other activities on the Company's properties;

---

project economics;

future metal prices and exchange rates;

mineral reserve and mineral resource estimates; and

potential changes in the ownership structures of the Company's projects.

Forward-Looking Statements reflect the current expectations or beliefs of the Company based on information currently available to the Company. Forward-Looking Statements in respect of capital costs, operating costs, production rate, grade per tonne and concentrator and smelter recovery are based upon the estimates in the technical report referred to in this Annual Report and in the documents incorporated by reference herein and ongoing cost estimation work, and the Forward-Looking Statements in respect of metal prices and exchange rates are based upon the three year trailing average prices and the assumptions contained in such technical report and ongoing estimates.

Forward-Looking Statements are subject to a number of risks and uncertainties that may cause the actual events or results to differ materially from those discussed in the Forward-Looking Statements, and even if events or results discussed in the Forward-Looking Statements are realized or substantially realized, there can be no assurance that they will have the expected consequences to, or effects on, the Company. Factors that could cause actual results or events to differ materially from current expectations include, among other things:

regulatory approval requirements relating to the 2018 Share Consolidation;

risks relating to the Company's inability to receive or realize the proceeds of, or possible litigation arising from state two of the sale of Maseve Investments 11 Proprietary Limited ("**Maseve**");

the Company's additional financing requirements;

the Company's history of losses;

the inability of the Company to generate sufficient additional cash flow to make payment on its indebtedness under the LMM Facility (defined below) and the Company's convertible notes, and to comply with the terms of such indebtedness, and the restrictions imposed by such indebtedness;

the Company's secured loan facility (the "**LMM Facility**") with Liberty Metals & Mining Holdings, LLC ( "**LMM** ") is, and any new indebtedness may be, secured and the Company has pledged its shares of Platinum Group Metals (RSA) Proprietary Limited, the Company's wholly owned subsidiary located in South Africa ( "**PTM RSA** "), and PTM RSA has pledged its shares of Waterberg JV Resources Proprietary Limited ( "**Waterberg JV Co.** ") to LMM under the LMM Facility, which potentially could result in the loss of the Company's interest in PTM RSA and the "**Waterberg Project**", the group of exploration projects that came from a regional target initiative by the Company targeting a previously unknown extension to the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex in South Africa, in the event of a default under the LMM Facility or any new secured indebtedness;

the Company's negative cash flow;

the Company's ability to continue as a going concern;

uncertainty of estimated production, development plans and cost estimates for the Waterberg Project;



discrepancies between actual and estimated mineral reserves and mineral resources, between actual and estimated development and operating costs, between actual and estimated metallurgical recoveries and between estimated and actual production;

the Company's ability to regain compliance with NYSE American continued listing requirements;

fluctuations in the relative values of the U.S. Dollar, the Rand and the Canadian Dollar;

volatility in metals prices;

the failure of the Company or the other shareholders of Waterberg JV Co. to fund their pro rata share of funding obligations for the Waterberg Project;

any disputes or disagreements with the Company's other shareholders of Waterberg JV Co. or Mnombo Wethu Consultants (Pty) Ltd., a South African Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment company ("**Mnombo**") or the former 17.1% shareholder of Maseve, Africa Wide Mineral Prospecting and Exploration (Pty) Limited ("**Africa Wide**");

completion of a Definitive Feasibility Study ("**DFS**") for the Waterberg Project, which is subject to resource upgrade and economic analysis requirements;

the Company is subject to assessment by various taxation authorities, who may interpret tax legislation in a manner different from the Company, which may negatively affect the final amount or the timing of the payment or refund of taxes;

the inability of Waterberg JV Co. to obtain the mining right for the Waterberg Project for which it has applied;

the ability of the Company to retain its key management employees and skilled and experienced personnel;

contractor performance and delivery of services, changes in contractors or their scope of work or any disputes with contractors;

conflicts of interest among the Company's officers and directors;

any designation of the Company as a passive foreign investment company and potential adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences for U.S. shareholders;

litigation or other legal or administrative proceedings brought against the Company;

actual or alleged breaches of governance processes or instances of fraud, bribery or corruption;

the possibility that the Company may become subject to the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended (the "**Investment Company Act**");

exploration, development and mining risks and the inherently dangerous nature of the mining industry, including environmental hazards, industrial accidents, unusual or unexpected formations, safety stoppages (whether voluntary or regulatory), pressures, mine collapses, cave ins or flooding and the risk of inadequate insurance or inability to obtain insurance to cover these risks and other risks and uncertainties;

property and mineral title risks including defective title to mineral claims or property;

changes in national and local government legislation, taxation, controls, regulations and political or economic developments in Canada, South Africa or other countries in which the Company does or may carry out business in the future;

---

equipment shortages and the ability of the Company to acquire the necessary access rights and infrastructure for its mineral properties;

environmental regulations and the ability to obtain and maintain necessary permits, including environmental authorizations and water use licences;

extreme competition in the mineral exploration industry;

delays in obtaining, or a failure to obtain, permits necessary for current or future operations or failures to comply with the terms of such permits;

any adverse decision in respect of the Company's mineral rights and projects in South Africa under the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act of 2020 (the "MRPDA");

risks of doing business in South Africa, including but not limited to, labour, economic and political instability and potential changes to and failures to comply with legislation;

the failure to maintain or increase equity participation by historically disadvantaged South Africans in the Company's prospecting and mining operations and to otherwise comply with the Broad Based Socio-Economic Empowerment Charter for the South African Mining Industry, 2018 ( **Mining Charter 2018** );

certain potential adverse Canadian tax consequences for foreign-controlled Canadian companies that acquire Common Shares of the Company;

the risk that the Company's Common Shares may be delisted;

volatility in the price of the Common Shares;

possible dilution to holders of Common Shares upon the exercise or conversion of outstanding stock options, warrants or convertible notes, as applicable; and

other risks disclosed under the heading "Risk Factors" in this Annual Report.

These factors should be considered carefully, and investors should not place undue reliance on the Company's Forward-Looking Statements. In addition, although the Company has attempted to identify important factors that could cause actual actions or results to differ materially from those described in Forward-Looking Statements, there may be other factors that cause actions or results not to be as anticipated, estimated or intended.

The mineral resource and mineral reserve figures referred to in this Annual Report and the documents incorporated herein by reference are estimates and no assurances can be given that the indicated levels of platinum ( **Pt** ), palladium ( **Pd** ), rhodium ( **Rh** ) and gold ( **Au** ) will be produced. Such estimates are expressions of judgment based on knowledge, mining experience, analysis of drilling results and industry practices. Valid estimates made at a given time may significantly change when new information becomes available. By their nature, mineral resource and mineral reserve estimates are imprecise and depend, to a certain extent, upon statistical inferences which may ultimately prove unreliable. Any inaccuracy or future reduction in such estimates could have a material adverse impact on the Company.

Any Forward-Looking Statement speaks only as of the date on which it is made and, except as may be required by applicable securities laws, the Company disclaims any intent or obligation to update any Forward-Looking Statement, whether as a result of new information, future events or results or otherwise.



**Cautionary Note to U.S. Investors**

Estimates of mineralization and other technical information included or incorporated by reference herein have been prepared in accordance with Canada's National Instrument 43-101 *Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects* ( **NI 43-101** ). The definitions of proven and probable reserves used in NI 43-101 differ from the definitions in SEC Industry Guide 7 of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission (the **SEC** ). Under SEC Industry Guide 7 standards, a final or bankable feasibility study is required to report reserves, the three-year historical average price is used in any reserve or cash flow analysis to designate reserves and the primary environmental analysis or report must be filed with the appropriate governmental authority. As a result, the reserves reported by the Company in accordance with NI 43-101 may not qualify as reserves under the current SEC standards. In addition, the terms mineral resource , measured mineral resource , indicated mineral resource and inferred mineral resource are defined in and required to be disclosed by NI 43-101; however, these terms are not defined terms under SEC Industry Guide 7 and have not normally been permitted to be used in reports and registration statements filed with the SEC. Mineral resources that are not mineral reserves do not have demonstrated economic viability. Investors are cautioned not to assume that any part or all of the mineral deposits in these categories will ever be converted into reserves. Inferred mineral resources have a great amount of uncertainty as to their existence, and great uncertainty as to their economic and legal feasibility. It cannot be assumed that all or any part of an inferred mineral resource will ever be upgraded to a higher category. Under Canadian securities laws, estimates of inferred mineral resources may not form the basis of feasibility or prefeasibility studies, except in rare cases. See Reserve and Mineral Resource Disclosure . Additionally, disclosure of contained ounces in a resource is permitted disclosure under Canadian securities laws; however, SEC Industry Guide 7 normally only permits issuers to report mineralization that does not constitute reserves by SEC Industry Guide 7 standards as in place tonnage and grade without reference to unit measurements. Accordingly, information contained in this Annual Report and the documents incorporated by reference herein containing descriptions of the Company's mineral deposits may not be comparable to similar information made public by U.S. companies subject to the reporting and disclosure requirements of SEC Industry Guide 7. The Company has not disclosed or determined any mineral reserves under the current SEC Industry Guide 7 standards in respect of any of its properties.

---

**Reserve and Mineral Resource Disclosure**

Due to the uncertainty that may be attached to inferred mineral resource estimates, it cannot be assumed that all or any part of an inferred mineral resource estimate will be upgraded to an indicated or measured mineral resource estimate as a result of continued exploration. Confidence in an inferred mineral resource estimate is insufficient to allow meaningful application of the technical and economic parameters to enable an evaluation of economic viability sufficient for public disclosure, except in certain limited circumstances set out NI 43-101. Inferred mineral resource estimates are excluded from estimates forming the basis of a feasibility study.

NI 43-101 requires mining companies to disclose reserves and resources using the subcategories of proven reserves, probable reserves, measured resources, indicated resources and inferred resources. Mineral resources that are not mineral reserves do not have demonstrated economic viability.

A **mineral reserve** is the economically mineable part of a measured or indicated mineral resource demonstrated by at least a preliminary feasibility study. This study must include adequate information on mining, processing, metallurgical, infrastructure, economic, marketing, legal, environmental, social, governmental and other relevant factors that demonstrate, at the time of reporting, that economic extraction can be justified. A mineral reserve includes diluting materials and allowances for losses which may occur when the material is mined or extracted. A **proven mineral reserve** is the economically mineable part of a measured mineral resource for which quantity, grade or quality, densities, shape and physical characteristics are estimated with confidence sufficient to allow the appropriate application of technical and economic parameters to support detailed mine planning and final evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit. A **probable mineral reserve** is the economically mineable part of an indicated, and in some circumstances, a measured mineral resource for which quantity, grade or quality, densities, shape and physical characteristics are estimated with sufficient confidence to allow the appropriate application of technical and economic parameters in sufficient detail to support mine planning and evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit.

---

A mineral resource is a concentration or occurrence of solid material in or on the Earth's crust in such form, grade or quality and quantity that there are reasonable prospects for eventual economic extraction. The location, quantity, grade or quality, continuity and other geological characteristics of a mineral resource are known, estimated or interpreted from specific geological evidence and knowledge, including sampling. A measured mineral resource is that part of a mineral resource for which quantity, grade or quality, densities, shape, and physical characteristics are estimated with confidence sufficient to allow the appropriate application of technical and economic parameters to support detailed mine planning and final evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit. Geological evidence is derived from detailed and reliable exploration, sampling and testing and is sufficient to confirm geological and grade or quality continuity between points of observation. An indicated mineral resource is that part of a mineral resource for which quantity, grade or quality, densities, shape and physical characteristics are estimated with sufficient confidence to allow the application of technical and economic parameters in sufficient detail to support mine planning and evaluation of the economic viability of the deposit. Geological evidence is derived from adequately detailed and reliable exploration, sampling and testing and is sufficient to assume geological and grade continuity between points of observation. Mineral resources that are not mineral reserves do not have demonstrated economic viability. An inferred mineral resource is that part of a mineral resource for which quantity and grade or quality are estimated on the basis of limited geological evidence and sampling. Geological evidence is sufficient to imply but not verify geological and grade or quality continuity. An inferred mineral resource is based on limited information and sampling gathered through appropriate sampling techniques from locations such as outcrops, trenches, pits, workings and drill holes.

A feasibility study is a comprehensive technical and economic study of the selected development option for a mineral project that includes appropriately detailed assessments of applicable mining, processing, metallurgical, infrastructure, economic, marketing, legal, environmental, social, governmental and other relevant operational factors and detailed financial analysis that are necessary to demonstrate, at the time of reporting, that extraction is reasonably justified (economically mineable). The results of the study may serve as the basis for a final decision by a proponent or financial institution to proceed with, or finance, the development of the project. A preliminary feasibility study or pre-feasibility study is a comprehensive study of a range of options for the technical and economic viability of a mineral project that has advanced to a stage where a preferred mining method, in the case of underground mining, or the pit configuration, in the case of an open pit, is established and an effective method of mineral processing is determined. It includes a financial analysis based on reasonable assumptions on the applicable mining, processing, metallurgical, infrastructure, economic, marketing, legal, environmental, social, governmental and other relevant operational factors and the evaluation of any other relevant factors which are sufficient for a qualified person, acting reasonably, to determine if all or part of the mineral resource may be converted to a mineral reserve at the time of reporting. Cut-off grade means (a) in respect of mineral resources, the lowest grade below which the mineralized rock currently cannot reasonably be expected to be economically extracted, and (b) in respect of mineral reserves, the lowest grade below which the mineralized rock currently cannot be economically extracted as demonstrated by either a preliminary feasibility study or a feasibility study. Cut-off grades vary between deposits depending upon the amenability of ore to mineral extraction and upon costs of production and metal prices.

---

## GLOSSARY OF TECHNICAL TERMS

**3E** means platinum, palladium and gold.

**4E** or **PGE** means platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold.

**anomalous** refers to a sample or location that either (i) the concentration of an element(s) or (ii) geophysical measurement is significantly different from the average background values in the area.

**anorthosite** is a rock comprised of largely feldspar minerals and minor mafic iron-magnesium minerals.

**assay** is an analysis to determine the quantity of one or more elemental components.

**Au** refers to gold.

**BIC** is an abbreviation for the Bushveld Igneous Complex in South Africa, the source of most of the world's platinum and is a significant producer of palladium and other platinum group metals (PGMs) as well as chrome.

**cm** is an abbreviation for centimeters.

**Cu** refers to copper.

**exploration stage** refers to the stage where a company is engaged in the search for minerals deposits (reserves) which are not in either the development or production stage.

**fault** is a fracture or break in a rock across which there has been displacement.

**gabbro** is an intrusive rock comprised of a mixture of mafic minerals and feldspars.

**grade** is the concentration of an ore metal in a rock sample, given either as weight percent for base metals (i.e., Cu, Zn, Pb) or in grams per tonne (g/t) or ounces per short ton (oz/t) for precious or platinum group metals.

**g/t** refers to grams per tonne.

**h** is an abbreviation for hectare.

**hectare** is an area totaling 10,000 square metres or 100 metres by 100 metres.

**intrusive** is a rock mass formed below earth's surface from molten magma, which was intruded into a pre-existing rock mass and cooled to solid.

**km** is an abbreviation for kilometre.

**m** is an abbreviation for metres.

**mafic** is a rock type consisting of predominantly iron and magnesium silicate minerals with little quartz or feldspar minerals.

---

**mineralization** refers to minerals of value occurring in rocks.

**Mt** is an abbreviation for million tonnes.

**Ni** is an abbreviation for nickel.

**outcrop** refers to an exposure of rock at the earth's surface.

**overburden** is any material covering or obscuring rocks from view.

**Pd** refers to palladium.

**PGM** refers to platinum group metals in accordance with the periodic table of elements, including platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold.

**Pt** refers to platinum.

**pyroxenite** refers to a relatively uncommon dark-coloured rock consisting chiefly of pyroxene; pyroxene is a type of rock containing sodium, calcium, magnesium, iron, titanium and aluminum combined with oxygen.

**quartz** is a common rock-forming mineral (SiO<sub>2</sub>)

**Rh** refers to rhodium, a platinum metal. Rhodium shares some of the notable properties of platinum, including its resistance to corrosion, its hardness and ductility. Wherever there is platinum in the earth, there is rhodium as well. In fact, most rhodium is extracted from a sludge that remains after platinum is removed from the ore. A high percentage of rhodium is also found in certain nickel deposits in Canada.

**ultramafic** refers to types of rock containing relatively high proportions of the heavier elements such as magnesium, iron, calcium and sodium; these rocks are usually dark in color and have relatively high specific gravities.

---

**PART I****ITEM 1. IDENTITY OF DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND ADVISERS**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 2. OFFER STATISTICS AND EXPECTED TIMETABLE**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 3. KEY INFORMATION****A. Selected Financial Data**

The Company's selected financial data as at August 31, 2018 and 2017 and for the fiscal years ended August 31, 2018, 2017 and 2016 are derived from its consolidated financial statements which have been audited by PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP as indicated in their independent auditors' report which is included elsewhere in this Annual Report. The selected financial data as at August 31, 2016 and 2015 and September 1, 2014 and for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2015 are derived from audited consolidated financial statements which are not included in this Annual Report.

The selected financial data should be read in conjunction with the financial statements and notes thereto as well as the information appearing under Item 5 – Operating and Financial Review and Prospects.

**Summary of Financial Data**

The Company's financial statements and the table set forth below have been prepared in accordance with IFRS, as issued by the IASB. All figures presented are in USD. On September 1, 2015, the first day of the 2016 fiscal year, the Company changed its presentation currency from CDN to USD. As a result, historical financial information from and after September 1, 2014 was restated in USD. The Company has omitted the presentation of selected financial data for periods prior to September 1, 2014 because such financial data cannot be restated in USD without unreasonable effort or expense.

<b>SELECTED FINANCIAL DATA</b> <i>(in thousands of USD, except share and per share data)</i>	<b>Year Ended 31-Aug-18</b>	<b>Year Ended 31-Aug-17</b>	<b>Year Ended 31-Aug-16</b>	<b>Year Ended 31-Aug-15</b>	
Other Income	2,056	3,143	1,133	3,781	
Net Loss	41,024	590,371	36,651	3,972	
Loss Per Share	0.20	4.30	0.26	0.05	
Dividends per Share	-	-	-	-	
	<b>31-Aug-18</b>	<b>31-Aug-17</b>	<b>31-Aug-16</b>	<b>31-Aug-15</b>	<b>1-Sep-14</b>
Working Capital	7,744	13,258	(20,683)	33,114	86,579
Total Assets	41,849	100,528	519,858	498,342	506,055

## Edgar Filing: PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD - Form 20-F

Long Term Liabilities	57,807	61,046	56,823	8,626	12,159
Mineral Properties	29,406	22,900	22,346	24,629	28,154
Property Plant and Equipment	1,057	1,543	469,696	417,177	356,483
Shareholder s Equity	(19,530)	(23,226)	419,448	473,346	467,617
Capital Stock	818,454	800,894	714,190	681,762	573,800
Number of Shares	291,034,110	148,469,377	88,857,028	76,894,302	55,131,283

---

**B. Capitalization and Indebtedness**

Not applicable.

**C. Reasons for the Offer and Use of Proceeds**

Not applicable.

**D. Risk Factors**

The Company's securities should be considered a highly speculative investment due to the nature of the Company's business and present stage of exploration and development of its mineral properties. Resource exploration and development is a speculative business, characterized by a number of significant risks including, among other things, unprofitable efforts resulting not only from the failure to discover mineral deposits but also from finding mineral deposits, which, though present, are insufficient in quantity or quality to return a profit from production. Investors should carefully consider all of the information disclosed in the Company's Canadian and U.S. regulatory filings prior to making an investment in the Company. Without limiting the foregoing, the following risk factors should be given special consideration when evaluating an investment in the Company's securities. Additional risks not currently known to the Company, or that the Company currently deems immaterial, may also impair the Company's operations.

**Risks Relating to the Company**

*The Company may be unable to generate sufficient cash to service its debt or otherwise comply with the terms of its debt, the terms of the agreements governing the Company's debt may restrict its current or future operations and the indebtedness may adversely affect the Company's financial condition and results of operations.*

The Company's ability to make scheduled payments on its indebtedness will depend on its ability to successfully realize on the proceeds from the Maseve Sale Transaction and raise additional funding by way of debt or equity offerings. It will also depend on the Company's financial condition and operating performance, which are subject to prevailing economic and competitive conditions and to certain financial, business, legislative, regulatory and other factors beyond its control. If the Company's cash flows and capital resources are insufficient to fund its debt service obligations, including if the Company is unable to realize on the proceeds of Step 2 of the Maseve Sale Transaction or if any necessary extensions or waivers the Company's lenders are not available, the Company could face substantial liquidity problems. This could also force the Company to reduce or delay investments and capital expenditures or to dispose of material assets or operations, seek additional debt or equity capital or restructure or refinance its indebtedness, including indebtedness under the LMM Facility. The Company may not be able to effect any such alternative measures on commercially reasonable terms or at all. Additionally, even if successful, those alternatives may not allow the Company to meet its scheduled debt service obligations.

---



In addition, a breach of the covenants under the Company's debt instruments could result in an event of default under the applicable indebtedness, or other events of default could occur. Such default could result in secured creditors realization of collateral. It may also allow the creditors to accelerate the related debt, result in the imposition of default interest, and result in the acceleration of any other debt to which a cross acceleration or cross default provision applies. In particular, a cross default provision applies to certain of the Company's indebtedness, including the LMM Facility and the Notes (defined below). In the event a lender accelerates the repayment of the Company's borrowings, the Company may not have sufficient assets to repay its indebtedness.

The Company's debt instruments include a number of covenants that impose operating and financial restrictions on it and may limit its ability to engage in acts that may be in its long term best interest. In particular, the LMM Facility requires the Company to sell its RBPlat ordinary shares by December 14, 2018, and to take all steps and actions as may be required to maintain the listing and posting for trading of the Common Shares on the Toronto Stock Exchange (the **TSX**) and the NYSE American LLC (the **NYSE American**), provided that the Company may move its listings to any other stock exchange or market as is acceptable to LMM. The LMM Facility also restricts the Company's ability to:

- modify material contracts;
- dispose of assets;
- use the proceeds from permitted dispositions and financings;
- incur additional indebtedness;
- enter into transactions with affiliates;
- grant security interests or encumbrances; and
- use proceeds from future debt or equity financings.

The indenture governing the Notes (defined below) also includes restrictive covenants, including, without limitation, covenants restricting the incurrence of indebtedness and the use of proceeds from asset sales. As a result of these and other restrictions, the Company:

- may be limited in how it conducts its business,
- may be unable to raise additional debt or equity financing,
- may be unable to compete effectively or to take advantage of new business opportunities or

may become in breach of its obligations to the other shareholders of Waterberg JV Co., Mnombo and others, each of which may affect the Company's ability to grow in accordance with its strategy or may otherwise adversely affect its business and financial condition.

---

Further, the Company's maintenance of substantial levels of debt could adversely affect its financial condition and results of operations and could adversely affect its flexibility to take advantage of corporate opportunities. Substantial levels of indebtedness could have important consequences to the Company, including:

limiting the Company's ability to obtain additional financing to fund future working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions or other general corporate requirements, or requiring it to make non-strategic divestitures;

requiring a substantial portion of the Company's cash flows to be dedicated to debt service payments instead of other purposes, thereby reducing the amount of cash flows available for working capital, capital expenditures, acquisitions and other general corporate purposes;

increasing the Company's vulnerability to general adverse economic and industry conditions;

exposing the Company to the risk of increased interest rates for any borrowings at variable rates of interest;

limiting the Company's flexibility in planning for and reacting to changes in the mining industry;

placing the Company at a disadvantage compared to other, less leveraged competitors; and

increasing the Company's cost of borrowing.

***The Company will require additional financing, which may not be available on acceptable terms, if at all.***

The Company does not have any source of operating revenues. The Company will be required to source additional financing by way of private or public offerings of equity or debt or the sale of project or property interests in order to have sufficient working capital for the continued exploration on the Waterberg Project, as well as for general working capital purposes and compliance with, and repayment of, its existing indebtedness. The Company can give no assurance that financing will be available to it or, if it is available, that it will be offered on acceptable terms. If the Company is required to complete any financings while the LMM Facility remains in force, securities issued in connection with such financings could not contain cashless exercise or conversion features due to the restrictions in the LMM Facility. This may make it more difficult to raise funds in amounts or on terms that are acceptable to the Company. Any failure to timely complete any required financing may result in a default under the LMM Facility. Unforeseen increases or acceleration of expenses and other obligations could require additional capital as of an earlier date. If additional financing is raised by the issuance of Company equity securities, control of the Company may change, security holders will suffer additional dilution and the price of the Common Shares and the Warrants may decrease. If additional financing is raised through the issuance of indebtedness, the Company will require additional financing in order to repay such indebtedness. Failure to obtain such additional financing could result in the delay or indefinite postponement of further development of its properties or even a loss of property interests.

If the Company fails to obtain required financing on acceptable terms or on a timely basis, this could cause it to delay development of the Waterberg Project, result in the Company being forced to sell additional assets on an untimely or unfavorable basis or result in a default under its outstanding indebtedness. Any such delay or sale could have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial condition, results of operations and liquidity. Any default under the Company's outstanding indebtedness could result in the loss of its entire interest in PTM RSA, and therefore its interests in the Waterberg Project.

---

***The Company may be unable to receive and realize on the proceeds of Step 2 of the Maseve Sale Transaction on the terms and timeframe anticipated, or at all, or such transaction may result in litigation.***

The Company holds 4,524,279 RBPlat ordinary shares received in Step 2 of the Maseve Sale Transaction. These RBPlat ordinary shares had a market value on November 29, 2018 of approximately US\$8.64 million based on the closing price of the RBPlat ordinary shares on the JSE Limited and the daily average exchange rates for Rand and U.S. dollars reported by the Federal Reserve of New York. While the Company intends to sell the RBPlat ordinary shares for cash, there can be no assurance that the Company will be able to sell the RBPlat ordinary shares for their current market value, or at all. The Company's RBPlat ordinary shares were held in a broker account at the time of writing this Annual Report, pending future disposition and payment of proceeds to LMM.

Additionally, the Maseve Sale Transaction may in the future be subject to litigation by one or more shareholders of the Company who may disagree with the Company's disposition of the Maseve Mine and may seek to vary or unwind the Maseve Sale Transaction. The impact of such litigation or the possible effect of a settlement of such litigation upon the Company cannot be predicted with any degree of certainty at this time. The failure to receive and realize on the proceeds of the Maseve Sale Transaction, or any such litigation, would adversely affect the Company's financial condition and may result in a default under the Company's indebtedness and the Company's insolvency.

***The Company has granted security interests in favour of the LMM Lenders over all of its personal property, subject to certain exceptions, and the Company has pledged its shares of PTM RSA, and PTM RSA has pledged its shares of Waterberg JV Co. to the LMM Lenders under the LMM Facility, which may have a material adverse effect on the Company.***

To secure the Company's obligations under the LMM Facility, it has entered into a general security agreement under which the Company has granted security interests in favour of LMM over all of its present and after acquired personal property, subject to certain exceptions. The Company has also entered into share pledge agreements pursuant to which it has granted a security interest in favour of LMM over all of the issued shares in the capital of PTM RSA. PTM RSA has also guaranteed the Company's obligations to LMM and pledged the shares the Company holds in Waterberg JV Co. in favour of LMM. These security interests and guarantee may impact the Company's ability to obtain project financing for the Waterberg Project or its ability to secure other types of financing. The LMM Facility has various covenants and provisions, including payment covenants and financial tests that must be satisfied and complied with during the term of the LMM Facility. There is no assurance that such covenants will be satisfied. Any default under the LMM Facility, including any covenants thereunder, could result in the loss of the Company's entire interest in PTM RSA, and therefore the Company's interests in the Waterberg Project.

***The Company has a history of losses and it anticipates continuing to incur losses.***

The Company has a history of losses. The Company anticipates continued losses until it can successfully place one or more of its properties into commercial production on a profitable basis. It could be years before the Company receives any profits from any production of metals, if ever. If the Company is unable to generate significant revenues with respect to its properties, the Company will not be able to earn profits or continue operations.

***The Company has a history of negative operating cash flow, and may continue to experience negative operating cash flow.***

The Company has had negative operating cash flow in recent financial years. The Company's ability to achieve and sustain positive operating cash flow will depend on a number of factors, including the Company's ability to advance the Waterberg Project into production. To the extent that the Company has negative cash flow in future periods, the Company may need to deploy a portion of its cash reserves to fund such negative cash flow. After giving effect to an

October 18, 2018 amendment, the LMM Facility requires that effective January 31, 2019 the Company maintain consolidated cash and cash equivalents of at least US\$2.0 million and working capital in excess of US\$1.0 million. There can be no assurance that additional debt or equity financing or other types of financing will be available if needed or that these financings will be on terms at least as favorable to the Company as those obtained previously. The Company may be required to raise additional funds through the issuance of additional equity or debt securities to satisfy the minimum cash balance requirements under the LMM Facility. The LMM Facility provides, however, that a significant portion of the proceeds of such financings are required to be paid to LMM in partial repayment of the LMM Facility. There can be no assurance that additional debt or equity financing or other types of financing will be available if needed or that these financings will be on terms at least as favorable to us as those obtained previously.

---

In October 2017, the Company also agreed with BMO Nesbitt Burns Inc. (“**BMO**”) and Macquarie Capital Markets Canada Ltd. (“**Macquarie**”) to pay BMO and Macquarie an aggregate of approximately US\$2.9 million as soon as practicable following the repayment of the Company’s working capital facility (the “**Sprott Facility**”) with the Sprott Resource Lending Partnership and the other secured lenders (the “**Sprott Lenders**”), and the LMM Facility for services previously provided. If the Company fails to raise additional funds, it may not be able to pay BMO and Macquarie, which may adversely affect the Company.

*The Company may not be able to continue as a going concern.*

The Company has limited financial resources. The Company’s ability to continue as a going concern is dependent upon, among other things, the Company establishing commercial quantities of mineral reserves and successfully establishing profitable production of such minerals or, alternatively, disposing of its interests on a profitable basis. Any unexpected costs, problems or delays could severely impact the Company’s ability to continue exploration and development activities. Should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern, realization of assets and settlement of liabilities in other than the normal course of business may be at amounts materially different than the Company’s estimates. The amounts attributed to the Company’s exploration properties in its financial statements represent acquisition and exploration costs and should not be taken to represent realizable value. The Company has suffered recurring losses from operations and significant amounts of debt payable without any current source of operating income. Also, the Company had a net capital deficiency that raised substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern.

*The Company’s properties may not be brought into a state of commercial production.*

Development of mineral properties involves a high degree of risk and few properties that are explored are ultimately developed into producing mines. The commercial viability of a mineral deposit is dependent upon a number of factors which are beyond the Company’s control, including the attributes of the deposit, commodity prices, government policies and regulation and environmental protection. Fluctuations in the market prices of minerals may render reserves and deposits containing relatively lower grades of mineralization uneconomic. The development of the Company’s properties will require obtaining land use consents, permits and the construction and operation of mines, processing plants and related infrastructure. The Company is subject to all of the risks associated with establishing new mining operations, including:

the timing and cost, which can be considerable, of the construction of mining and processing facilities and related infrastructure;

the availability and cost of skilled labour and mining equipment;

---

the availability and cost of appropriate smelting and/or refining arrangements;

the need to obtain and maintain necessary environmental and other governmental approvals and permits, and the timing of those approvals and permits;

in the event that the required permits are not obtained in a timely manner, mine construction and ramp-up will be delayed and the risks of government environmental authorities issuing directives or commencing enforcement proceedings to cease operations or administrative, civil and criminal sanctions being imposed on the Company, its directors and employees;

the availability of funds to finance construction and development activities;

potential opposition from non-governmental organizations, environmental groups or local community groups which may delay or prevent development activities; and

potential increases in construction and operating costs due to changes in the cost of fuel, power, materials and supplies and foreign exchange rates.

The costs, timing and complexities of mine construction and development are increased by the remote location of the Waterberg Project, with additional challenges related thereto, including water and power supply and other support infrastructure. For example, water resources are scarce at the Waterberg Project. If the Company should decide to mine at the Waterberg Project, it will have to establish sources of water and develop the infrastructure required to transport water to the project area. Similarly, the Company will need to secure a suitable location by purchase or long-term lease of surface or access rights at the Waterberg Project to establish the surface rights necessary to mine and process.

It is common in new mining operations to experience unexpected costs, problems and delays during development, construction and mine ramp-up. Accordingly, there are no assurances that the Company's properties, will be brought into a state of commercial production.

***Estimates of mineral reserves and mineral resources are based on interpretation and assumptions and are inherently imprecise.***

The mineral resource and mineral reserve estimates contained in this Annual Report and the other documents incorporated by reference herein have been determined and valued based on assumed future prices, cut off grades and operating costs. However, until mineral deposits are actually mined and processed, mineral reserves and mineral resources must be considered as estimates only. Any such estimates are expressions of judgment based on knowledge, mining experience, analysis of drilling results and industry practices. Estimates of operating costs are based on assumptions including those relating to inflation and currency exchange, which may prove incorrect. Estimates of mineralization can be imprecise and depend upon geological interpretation and statistical inferences drawn from drilling and sampling analysis, which may prove to be unreliable. In addition, the grade and/or quantity of precious metals ultimately recovered may differ from that indicated by drilling results. There can be no assurance that precious metals recovered in small scale tests will be duplicated in large scale tests under onsite conditions or in production scale. Amendments to the mine plans and production profiles may be required as the amount of resources changes or upon receipt of further information during the implementation phase of the project. Extended declines in market prices for platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold may render portions of the Company's mineralization uneconomic and result in reduced reported mineralization. Any material reductions in estimates of mineralization, or of the Company's ability to develop its properties and extract and sell such minerals, could have a material adverse effect on the Company's results of operations or financial condition.



***Actual capital costs, operating costs, production and economic returns may differ significantly from those the Company has anticipated and there are no assurances that any future development activities will result in profitable mining operations.***

The capital costs to take the Company's projects into commercial production may be significantly higher than anticipated. None of the Company's mineral properties has an operating history upon which the Company can base estimates of future operating costs. Decisions about the development of the Company's mineral properties will ultimately be based upon feasibility studies. Feasibility studies derive estimates of cash operating costs based upon, among other things:

anticipated tonnage, grades and metallurgical characteristics of the ore to be mined and processed;

anticipated recovery rates of metals from the ore;

cash operating costs of comparable facilities and equipment; and

anticipated climatic conditions.

Capital costs, operating costs, production and economic returns and other estimates contained in studies or estimates prepared by or for the Company may differ significantly from those anticipated by the Company's current studies and estimates, and there can be no assurance that the Company's actual capital and operating costs will not be higher than currently anticipated. As a result of higher capital and operating costs, production and economic returns may differ significantly from those the Company has anticipated.

***The Company is subject to the risk of fluctuations in the relative values of the U.S. Dollar, the Rand and the Canadian Dollar.***

The Company may be adversely affected by foreign currency fluctuations. Effective September 1, 2015, the Company adopted U.S. Dollars as the currency for the presentation of its financial statements. Historically, the Company has primarily generated funds through equity investments into the Company denominated in Canadian or U.S. Dollars. In the normal course of business, the Company enters into transactions for the purchase of supplies and services primarily denominated in Rand or Canadian Dollars. The Company also has assets, cash and liabilities denominated in Rand, Canadian Dollars and U.S. Dollars. Several of the Company's options to acquire properties or surface rights in South Africa may result in payments by the Company denominated in Rand or in U.S. Dollars. Exploration, development and administrative costs to be funded by the Company in South Africa will also be denominated in Rand. Settlement of sales of minerals from the Company's projects, once commercial production commences, will be in Rand, and will be converted to U.S. Dollars. Fluctuations in the exchange rates between the U.S. Dollar and the Rand or Canadian Dollar may have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial results.

In addition, South Africa has in the past experienced double-digit rates of inflation. If South Africa experiences substantial inflation in the future, the Company's costs in Rand terms will increase significantly, subject to movements in applicable exchange rates. Inflationary pressures may also curtail the Company's ability to access global financial markets in the longer term and its ability to fund planned capital expenditures, and could materially adversely affect the Company's business, financial condition and results of operations. Downgrades, and potential further downgrades, to South Africa's sovereign currency ratings by international ratings agencies would likely adversely affect the value of the Rand relative to the Canadian or U.S. Dollar. The South African government's response to inflation or other significant macro-economic pressures may include the introduction of policies or other measures that could increase the Company's costs, reduce operating margins and materially adversely affect its business, financial condition and results of operations.





*Metal prices are subject to change, and low prices or a substantial or extended decline or volatility in such prices could materially and adversely affect the value of the Company's mineral properties and potential future results of operations and cash flows.*

Metal prices have historically been subject to significant price fluctuations. No assurance may be given that metal prices will remain stable. Significant price fluctuations over short periods of time may be generated by numerous factors beyond the control of the Company, including:

domestic and international economic and political trends;

expectations of inflation;

currency exchange fluctuations;

interest rates;

global or regional consumption patterns;

speculative activities; and

increases or decreases in production due to improved mining and production methods.

Low metal prices or significant or continued reductions or volatility in metal prices may have an adverse effect on the Company's business, including the amount of the Company's mineral reserves, the economic attractiveness of the Company's projects, the Company's ability to obtain financing and develop projects, the amount of the Company's revenues or profit or loss and the value of the Company's assets. An impairment in the value of the Company's assets would require such assets to be written down to their estimated net recoverable amount. The Company wrote down certain assets as at August 31, 2017 and August 31, 2016. See the Company's financial statements included in this Annual Report.

*The failure of the Company or its joint venture partners to fund their pro-rata share of funds under the respective joint ventures may have a material adverse effect on the Company's business and results of operations.*

Except in the case of a \$20 million funding commitment by Japan, Oil, Gas and Metals National Corporation ( **JOGMEC** ), which has now been fully funded and expended, and the potential for the receipt of funding if Impala exercises its Purchase and Development Option (as defined below), the exercise of which is not guaranteed and is not expected to occur prior to the completion of the DFS, funding of Waterberg Project costs is generally required to be provided by Waterberg JV Co. shareholders on a pro rata basis. Even if Implats exercises and funds its Purchase and Development Option, additional development costs are likely to be incurred. The ability of the Company, and the ability and willingness of its joint venture partners, to satisfy required funding obligations is uncertain.

The Company's only material mineral property is the Waterberg Project (the **Waterberg Project** ), which is comprised of two adjacent project areas formerly known as the Waterberg Joint Venture Project, which was created in 2009 as a joint venture between the Company, JOGMEC and Mnombo (the **Waterberg Joint Venture Project** ), and the Waterberg Extension Project, which was created in 2009 as a joint venture between the Company and Mnombo (the **Waterberg Extension Project** ). The Company has agreed in the Mnombo shareholders' agreement to fund Mnombo's pro rata share of costs for the original Waterberg Joint Venture Project area through the completion of the DFS. Mnombo is responsible to fund its proportionate share of costs for the Waterberg Extension Project area. The ability of Mnombo to repay the Company for advances and accrued interest as at August 31, 2018 of approximately Rand 49.98 million (approximately \$3.4 million as at August 31, 2018) or to fund future investment in the Waterberg

Project following the expiration of the Company's contractual obligation may be uncertain. If the Company fails to fund Mnombo's future capital obligations for the Waterberg Project, Mnombo may be required to obtain funding from alternative sources, which may not be available on favorable terms, or at all. If Mnombo is unable to fund its share of such work, this may delay project expenditures and may result in dilution of Mnombo's interest in the Waterberg Project and require the sale of the diluted interests to another qualified broad-based black economic empowerment ( **BEE** ) entity.

---

Because the development of the Company's projects depends on the ability to finance further operations, any inability of the Company or of one or more of the other shareholders of Waterberg JV Co. or Mnombo to fund their respective funding obligations and cash calls in the future could require the other parties, including the Company, to increase their respective funding of the project. In this event, such parties may be unwilling or unable to do so on a timely and commercially reasonable basis, or at all. At the Maseve Mine, the Company was adversely affected by the failure of Africa Wide to satisfy its pro rata share of funding. The occurrence of the foregoing, the failure of any shareholder, including the Company, to increase their funding as required to cover any shortfall, as well as any dilution of its interests in the Company's ventures as a result of its own failure to satisfy a cash call, may have a material adverse effect on the Company's business and results of operations.

***Any disputes or disagreements with the other shareholders of Waterberg JV Co. or Mnombo or the former shareholders of Maseve could materially and adversely affect the Company's business.***

The Company participates in corporatized joint ventures and may enter into other joint ventures and similar arrangements in the future. Until the closing of the Maseve Sale Transaction, PTM RSA was a party to the Maseve shareholders' agreement related to the exploration and development of Project 1 and Project 3. In addition, PTM RSA is also a party to the Waterberg Project shareholders' agreement. PTM RSA is also a 49.9% shareholder of Mnombo and the relationship among the shareholders of Mnombo is governed by the Mnombo shareholders' agreement. Any dispute or disagreement with another shareholder or joint venture partner, any change in the identity, management or strategic direction of another shareholder or joint venture partner, or any disagreement among the Mnombo shareholders, including with respect to Mnombo's role in the Waterberg Project, could materially adversely affect the Company's business and results of operations. If a dispute arises between the Company and another shareholder or joint venture partner or the other Mnombo shareholders that cannot be resolved amicably, the Company may be unable to move its projects forward and may be involved in lengthy and costly proceedings to resolve the dispute. This could materially and adversely affect the Company's business and results of operations.

***Completion of a DFS for the Waterberg Project is subject to economic analysis requirements.***

Completion of a DFS for the Waterberg Project is subject to completion of a positive economic analysis of the mineral deposit. No assurance can be provided that such analysis will be positive.

---

***If the Company is unable to retain key members of management, the Company's business might be harmed.***

The Company's development to date has depended, and in the future, will continue to depend, on the efforts of its senior management including: R. Michael Jones, President and Chief Executive Officer and a director of the Company; and Frank R. Hallam, Chief Financial Officer and Corporate Secretary and a director of the Company. The Company currently does not, and does not intend to, have key person insurance for these individuals. Departures by members of senior management could have a negative impact on the Company's business, as the Company may not be able to find suitable personnel to replace departing management on a timely basis or at all. The loss of any member of the senior management team could impair the Company's ability to execute its business plan and could therefore have a material adverse effect on the Company's business, results of operations and financial condition.

***If the Company is unable to procure the services of skilled and experienced personnel, the Company's business might be harmed.***

There is currently a shortage of skilled and experienced personnel in the mining industry in South Africa. The competition for skilled and experienced employees is exacerbated by the fact that mining companies operating in South Africa are legally obliged to recruit and retain historically disadvantaged persons ( **HDPs** ), as defined by the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002 (the **MPRDA** ) and women with the relevant skills and experience at levels that meet the transformation objectives set out in the MPRDA and Mining Charter 2018. If the Company is unable to attract and retain sufficiently trained, skilled or experienced personnel, its business may suffer, and it may experience significantly higher staff or contractor costs, which could have a material adverse effect on its business, results of operations and financial condition.

***Conflicts of interest may arise among the Company's officers and directors as a result of their involvement with other mineral resource companies.***

Certain of the Company's officers and directors are, and others may become, associated with other natural resource companies that acquire interests in mineral properties. R. Michael Jones, President and Chief Executive Officer and a director of the Company, is also the President and Chief Executive Officer and a director of West Kirkland Mining Inc., a public company with mineral exploration properties in Ontario and Nevada ( **WKM** ), and a director of Nextraction Energy Corp. ( **NE** ), a public company which previously held oil properties in Alberta, Kentucky and Wyoming. Frank Hallam, Chief Financial Officer, Corporate Secretary and a director of the Company, is also a director, Chief Financial Officer and Corporate Secretary of WKM, and a director of NE. John A. Copelyn, a director of the Company, is also Chief Executive Officer of Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited, a significant shareholder of the Company and the holder of a diverse group of investments including hotel and leisure, interactive gaming, media and broadcasting, transport, mining, clothing and properties. Diana Walters, a director of the Company, was formerly an executive officer of LMM, a significant shareholder of the Company, the lender under the LMM Facility.

Such associations may give rise to conflicts of interest from time to time. As a result of these potential conflicts of interests, the Company may miss the opportunity to participate in certain transactions, which may have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial position. The Company's directors are required by law to act honestly and in good faith with a view to the best interests of the Company and to disclose any interest that they may have in any project or opportunity of the Company. If a subject involving a conflict of interest arises at a meeting of the board of directors, any director in a conflict must disclose his interest and abstain from voting on such matter.

---

***The Company is currently subject to litigation, and may become subject to additional litigation and other legal proceedings, that may adversely affect the Company's financial condition and results of operations.***

All companies are subject to legal claims, with and without merit. The Company's operations are subject to the risk of legal claims by employees, unions, contractors, lenders, suppliers, joint venture partners, shareholders, governmental agencies or others through private actions, class actions, administrative proceedings, regulatory actions or other litigation. On September 20, 2018 the Company reported that it is in receipt of a summons issued by Africa Wide whereby Africa Wide, formerly the holder of a 17.1% interest in Maseve, has instituted legal proceedings in South Africa against the Company's wholly owned subsidiary, PTM RSA, RBPlat and Maseve in relation to the Maseve Transaction. Africa Wide is seeking to set aside or be paid increased value for, the closed Maseve Transaction. While the Company believes that the Africa Wide action is factually and legally defective, no assurance can be provided that the Company will prevail in this action. If Africa Wide were successful, it could have a material adverse effect on the Company.

The outcome of litigation and other legal proceedings that the Company may be involved in the future, particularly regulatory actions, is difficult to assess or quantify. Plaintiffs may seek recovery of very large or indeterminate amounts, or equitable remedies such as setting aside the Maseve Transaction, and the magnitude of the potential loss relating to such lawsuits may remain unknown for substantial periods of time. Defense and settlement costs can be substantial, even with respect to claims that have no merit. Due to the inherent uncertainty of the litigation process, the litigation process could take away from the time and effort of the Company's management and could force the Company to pay substantial legal fees. There can be no assurance that the resolution of any particular legal proceeding, including the Africa Wide action, will not have an adverse effect on the Company's financial position and results of operations.

***An actual or alleged breach or breaches in governance processes or fraud, bribery and corruption may lead to public and private censure, regulatory penalties, loss of licenses or permits and may damage the Company's reputation.***

The Company is subject to anti-corruption laws and regulations, including the Canadian Corruption of Foreign Public Officials Act and certain restrictions applicable to U.S. reporting companies imposed by the U.S. Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended, and similar anti-corruption and anti-bribery laws in South Africa, which generally prohibit companies from bribing or making other prohibited payments to foreign public officials in order to obtain or retain an advantage in the course of business. The Company's Code of Business Conduct and Ethics, among other governance and compliance processes, may not prevent instances of fraudulent behavior and dishonesty nor guarantee compliance with legal and regulatory requirements. The Company is particularly exposed to the potential for corruption and bribery owing to the financial scale of the mining business in South Africa. In March 2014, the Organisation for Economic Cooperation and Development (the **OECD**) released its Phase 3 Report on Implementing the OECD Anti-Bribery Convention in South Africa, criticizing South Africa for failing to enforce the anti-bribery convention to which it has been a signatory since 2007. The absence of enforcement of corporate liability for foreign bribery coincides with recent growth in corporate activity in South Africa's economic environment. Allegations of bribery, improper personal influence or officials holding simultaneous business interests have been linked in recent years to the highest levels of the South African government.

---

To the extent that the Company suffers from any actual or alleged breach or breaches of relevant laws, including South African anti-bribery and corruption legislation, it may lead to regulatory and civil fines, litigation, public and private censure and loss of operating licenses or permits and may damage the Company's reputation. The occurrence of any of these events could have an adverse effect on the Company's business, financial condition and results of operations.

***The Company may become subject to the requirements of the Investment Company Act, which would limit or alter the Company's business operations and may require the Company to spend significant resources, or dissolve, to comply with such act.***

The Investment Company Act generally defines an investment company to include, subject to certain exceptions, an issuer that is engaged or proposes to engage in the business of investing, reinvesting, owning, holding or trading in securities, and owns or proposes to acquire investment securities having a value exceeding 40 percent of the issuer's unconsolidated assets, excluding cash items and securities issued by the U.S. federal government. The Company believes that it is not an investment company and is not subject to the Investment Company Act. However, recent and future transactions that affect the Company's assets, operations and sources of income and loss, including any exercise of the Purchase and Development Option (defined below), may raise the risk that the Company could be deemed an investment company.

The Company has obtained no formal determination from the SEC as to its status under the Investment Company Act but the Company may in the future determine that it is necessary or desirable to seek an exemptive order from the SEC that it is not deemed to be an investment company. There can be no assurance that the SEC would agree with the Company that it is not an investment company and the SEC may make a contrary determination with respect to the Company's status as an investment company. If an SEC exemptive order were unavailable, the Company may be required to liquidate or dispose of certain assets, including its interests in Waterberg JV Co., or otherwise alter its business plans or activities.

If the Company is deemed to be an investment company, the Company would be required to register as an investment company under the Investment Company Act, pursuant to which the Company would incur significant registration and compliance costs, which is unlikely to be feasible for the Company. In addition, a non-U.S. company such as the Company is not permitted to register under the Investment Company Act absent an order from the SEC, which may not be available. If the Company were deemed to be an investment company and it failed to register under the Investment Company Act, it would be subject to significant legal restrictions, including being prohibited from engaging in the following activities, except where incidental to the Company's dissolution: offering or selling any security or any interest in a security; purchasing, redeeming, retiring or otherwise acquiring any security or any interest in a security; controlling an investment company that engages in any of these activities; engaging in any business in interstate commerce; or controlling any company that is engaged in any business in interstate commerce. In addition, certain of the Company's contracts might not be enforceable and civil and criminal actions could be brought against the Company and related persons. As a result of this risk, the Company may be required to significantly limit or alter its business plans or activities.

---

**Risks Related to the Mining Industry**

*Mining is inherently dangerous and is subject to conditions or events beyond the Company's control, which could have a material adverse effect on the Company's business.*

Hazards such as fire, explosion, floods, structural collapses, industrial accidents, unusual or unexpected geological conditions, ground control problems, power outages, inclement weather, cave-ins and mechanical equipment failure are inherent risks in the Company's mining operations. These and other hazards may cause injuries or death to employees, contractors or other persons at the Company's mineral properties, severe damage to and destruction of the Company's property, plant and equipment and mineral properties, and contamination of, or damage to, the environment, and may result in the suspension of the Company's exploration and development activities and any future production activities. Safety measures implemented by the Company may not be successful in preventing or mitigating future accidents and the Company may not be able to obtain insurance to cover these risks at economically feasible premiums or at all. Insurance against certain environmental risks is not generally available to the Company or to other companies within the mining industry.

In addition, from time to time the Company may be subject to governmental investigations and claims and litigation filed on behalf of persons who are harmed while at its properties or otherwise in connection with the Company's operations. To the extent that the Company is subject to personal injury or other claims or lawsuits in the future, it may not be possible to predict the ultimate outcome of these claims and lawsuits due to the nature of personal injury litigation. Similarly, if the Company is subject to governmental investigations or proceedings, the Company may incur significant penalties and fines, and enforcement actions against it could result in the cessation of certain of the Company's mining operations. If claims, lawsuits, governmental investigations or proceedings, including Section 54 stoppage notices issued under the Mine Health and Safety Act, No. 29 of 1996 (the **MHSA**), are resolved against the Company, the Company's financial performance, financial position and results of operations could be materially adversely affected.

*The Company's prospecting and mining rights are subject to title risks.*

The Company's prospecting and mining rights may be subject to prior unregistered agreements, transfers, claims and title may be affected by undetected defects. Although Waterberg JV Co. has the exclusive right to apply for a mining right in regard to the Waterberg Project by reason of its prior holding of the prospecting rights over the project area, there is no guarantee that it will be granted the mining right for which it has applied. A successful challenge to the precise area and location of these claims could result in the Company being unable to operate on its properties as permitted or being unable to enforce its rights with respect to its properties. This could result in the Company not being compensated for its prior expenditures relating to the property. Title insurance is generally not available for mineral properties and the Company's ability to ensure that it has obtained secure claims to individual mineral properties or mining concessions may be severely constrained. These or other defects could adversely affect the Company's title to its properties or delay or increase the cost of the development of such prospecting and mining rights.

*The Company is subject to significant governmental regulation.*

The Company's operations and exploration and development activities in South Africa and Canada are subject to extensive federal, state, provincial, territorial and local laws and regulation governing various matters, including:

---



environmental protection;

management and use of hazardous and toxic substances and explosives;

management of tailings and other waste generated by the Company's operations;

management of natural resources;

exploration, development of mines, production and post-closure reclamation;

exports and, in South Africa, potential local beneficiation quotas;

price controls;

taxation;

regulations concerning business dealings with local communities;

labour standards, BEE laws and regulations and occupational health and safety, including mine safety; and

historic and cultural preservation.

Failure to comply with applicable laws and regulations may result in civil or criminal fines or administrative penalties or enforcement actions, including orders issued by regulatory or judicial authorities enjoining or curtailing operations, requiring corrective measures, installation of additional equipment, remedial actions or recovery of costs if the authorities attend to remediation of any environmental pollution or degradation, any of which could result in the Company incurring significant expenditures. Environmental non-profit organizations have become particularly vigilant in South Africa and focus on the mining sector. Several such organizations have recently instituted actions against mining companies. The Company may also be required to compensate private parties suffering loss or damage by reason of a breach of such laws, regulations or permitting requirements. It is also possible that future laws and regulations, or a more stringent enforcement of current laws and regulations by governmental authorities, could cause additional expense, capital expenditures, restrictions on or suspensions of the Company's operations and delays in the development of the Company's properties.

***The Company may face equipment shortages, access restrictions and lack of infrastructure.***

Natural resource exploration, development and mining activities are dependent on the availability of mining, drilling and related equipment in the particular areas where such activities are conducted. A limited supply of such equipment or access restrictions may affect the availability of such equipment to the Company and may delay exploration, development or extraction activities. Certain equipment may not be immediately available, or may require long lead time orders. A delay in obtaining necessary equipment for mineral exploration, including drill rigs, could have a material adverse effect on the Company's operations and financial results.

Mining, processing, development and exploration activities also depend, to one degree or another, on the availability of adequate infrastructure. Reliable roads, bridges, power sources, fuel and water supply and the availability of skilled labour and other infrastructure are important determinants that affect capital and operating costs. At the Waterberg Project, additional infrastructure will be required prior to commencement of mining. The establishment and maintenance of infrastructure, and services are subject to a number of risks, including risks related to the availability of equipment and materials, inflation, cost overruns and delays, political opposition and reliance upon third parties, many of which are outside the Company's control. The lack of availability on acceptable terms or the delay in the

availability of any one or more of these items could prevent or delay development or ongoing operation of the Company's projects.

---

Exploration of mineral properties is less intrusive, and generally requires fewer surface and access rights, than properties developed for mining. The Company has not secured any surface rights at the Waterberg Project other than those access rights legislated by the MPRDA. If a decision is made to develop the Waterberg Project, or other projects in which the Company has yet to secure adequate surface rights, the Company will need to secure such rights. No assurances can be provided that the Company will be able to secure required surface rights on favorable terms, or at all. Any failure by the Company to secure surface rights could prevent or delay development of the Company's projects.

***The Company's operations are subject to environmental laws and regulations that may increase the Company's costs of doing business and restrict its operations.***

Environmental legislation on a global basis is evolving in a manner that will ensure stricter standards and enforcement, increased fines and penalties for non-compliance, more stringent environmental assessment of proposed development and a higher level of responsibility and potential liability for companies and their officers, directors, employees and, potentially, shareholders. Compliance with environmental laws and regulations may require significant capital outlays on behalf of the Company and may cause material changes or delays in the Company's intended activities. There can be no assurance that future changes to environmental legislation in Canada or South Africa will not adversely affect the Company's operations. Environmental hazards may exist on the Company's properties which are unknown at present and which have been caused by previous or existing owners or operators for which the Company could be held liable. Furthermore, future compliance with environmental reclamation, closure and other requirements may involve significant costs and other liabilities. In particular, the Company's operations and exploration activities are subject to Canadian and South African national and provincial laws and regulations governing protection of the environment. Such laws are continually changing and, in general, are becoming more onerous. See Item 4.B. South African Regulatory Framework.

Amendments to current laws, regulations and permits governing operations and activities of mining companies, or more stringent implementation thereof, could have a material adverse impact on the Company and cause increases in capital expenditures or production costs or a reduction in levels of production at producing properties or require abandonment or delays in development of new mining properties. Environmental hazards may exist on the Company's properties that are unknown at the present time, and that may have been caused by previous owners or operators or that may have occurred naturally. These hazards, as well as any pollution caused by the Company's mining activities, may give rise to significant financial obligations in the future and such obligations could have a material adverse effect on the Company's financial performance.

***The mineral exploration industry is extremely competitive.***

The resource industry is intensely competitive in all of its phases. Much of the Company's competition is from larger, established mining companies with greater liquidity, greater access to credit and other financial resources, and that may have newer or more efficient equipment, lower cost structures, more effective risk management policies and procedures and/or greater ability than the Company to withstand losses. The Company's competitors may be able to respond more quickly to new laws or regulations or emerging technologies, or devote greater resources to the expansion of their operations, than the Company can. In addition, current and potential competitors may make strategic acquisitions or establish cooperative relationships among themselves or with third parties. Competition could adversely affect the Company's ability to acquire suitable new producing properties or prospects for exploration in the future. Competition could also affect the Company's ability to raise financing to fund the exploration and development of its properties or to hire qualified personnel. The Company may not be able to compete successfully against current and future competitors, and any failure to do so could have a material adverse effect on the Company's business, financial condition or results of operations.



*The Company requires various permits in order to conduct its current and anticipated future operations, and delays or a failure to obtain such permits, or a failure to comply with the terms of any such permits that the Company has obtained, could have a material adverse impact on the Company.*

The Company's current and anticipated future operations, including further exploration, development activities and commencement of commercial production on the Company's properties, require permits from various national, provincial, territorial and local governmental authorities in the countries in which the Company's properties are located. Compliance with the applicable environmental legislation, permits and land use consents is required on an ongoing basis, and the requirements under such legislation, permits and consents are evolving rapidly and imposing additional requirements. The Waterberg Project prospecting rights issued by the Department of Mineral Resources ("DMR") are also subject to land use consents and compliance with applicable legislation on an ongoing basis.

In addition, the duration and success of efforts to obtain, amend and renew permits are contingent upon many variables not within the Company's control. Shortage of qualified and experienced personnel in the various levels of government could result in delays or inefficiencies. Backlog within the permitting agencies could also affect the permitting timeline of the Company's various projects. Other factors that could affect the permitting timeline include the number of other large-scale projects currently in a more advanced stage of development, which could slow down the review process, and significant public response regarding a specific project. As well, it can be difficult to assess what specific permitting requirements will ultimately apply to all the Company's projects.

#### **Risks of Doing Business in South Africa**

*Any adverse decision in respect of the Company's mineral rights and projects in South Africa under the MPRDA could materially affect the Company's projects in South Africa.*

With the enactment of the MPRDA, the South African state became the sole regulator of all prospecting and mining operations in South Africa. All prospecting and mining licenses and claims granted in terms of any prior legislation became known as the "old order rights". All prospecting and mining rights granted in terms of the MPRDA are "new order rights". The treatment of new applications and pending applications is uncertain and any adverse decision by the relevant regulatory authorities under the MPRDA may adversely affect title to the Company's mineral rights in South Africa, which could stop, materially delay or restrict the Company from proceeding with its exploration and development activities or any future mining operations.

A wide range of factors and principles must be taken into account by the Minister when considering applications for new order rights. These factors include the applicant's access to financial resources and appropriate technical ability to conduct the proposed prospecting or mining operations, the environmental impact of the operation, whether the applicant holds an environmental authorization, water-use licence and waste management licence and, in the case of prospecting rights, considerations relating to fair competition. Other factors include considerations relevant to promoting employment and the social and economic welfare of all South Africans and showing compliance with the provisions regarding the empowerment of HDPs in the mining industry. All the Company's current prospecting rights are new order rights.

---

The assessment of some of the provisions of the MPRDA or the Mining Charter 2018 may be subjective and is dependent upon the views of the DMR as to whether the Company is in compliance. The Waterberg Social and Labour Plan, for instance, will contain both quantitative and qualitative goals, targets and commitments relating to the Company's obligations to its employees and community residents, the achievement of some of which are not exclusively within the Company's control.

The Minister has the discretion to cancel or suspend mining rights under Section 47(1) of the MPRDA as a consequence of the Company's non-compliance with the MPRDA, environmental legislation, Mining Charter 2018, the terms of its prospecting rights or, once granted, its Mining Right.

The Section 47 process involves multiple, successive stages which include granting the Company a reasonable opportunity to show why its rights should not be cancelled or suspended. Pursuant to the terms of the provisions of Section 6(2)(e)(iii) of the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, No. 3 of 2000 (the **PAJA**) read with Section 6 of the MPRDA, the Minister can direct the Company to take remedial measures. If such remedial measures are not taken, the Minister must again give the Company a reasonable opportunity to make representations as to why such remedial measures were not taken. The Minister must then properly consider the Company's further representations (which considerations must also comply with PAJA) and only then is the Minister entitled to cancel or suspend a mining right. Any such cancellation or suspension will be subject to judicial review if it is not in compliance with the MPRDA or PAJA, or it is not lawful, reasonable and procedurally fair under Section 33(1) of the South African Constitution.

Failure by the Company to meet its obligations in relation to the MPRDA, its prospecting rights or its Mining Right, once granted, or Mining Charter 2018 could lead to the suspension or cancellation of such rights and the suspension of the Company's other rights, which would have a material adverse effect on the Company's business, financial condition and results of operations.

***The failure to maintain or increase equity participation by HDPs in the Company's prospecting and mining operations could adversely affect the Company's ability to maintain its prospecting and mining rights.***

The Company is subject to a number of South African statutes aimed at promoting the accelerated integration of HDPs, including the MPRDA, the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2003 (the **BEE Act**), and Mining Charter 2018. To ensure that socioeconomic strategies are implemented, the MPRDA provides for the Mining Codes which specify empowerment targets consistent with the objectives of Mining Charter 2018. The Mining Charter 2018 Scorecard requires the mining industry's commitment of applicants in respect of ownership, management, employment equity, human resource development, procurement, mine community development and housing and living conditions. For ownership by BEE groups in mining enterprises, the previous mining charter ("**Mining Charter 2010**") set a 26% target by December 31, 2014.

The South African government awards procurement contracts, quotas, licenses, permits and prospecting and mining rights based on numerous factors, including the degree of HDP ownership. The MPRDA and Mining Charter 2018 contain provisions relating to the economic empowerment of HDPs. One of the requirements which must be met before the DMR will issue a mining right is that an applicant must facilitate equity participation by HDPs in the prospecting and mining operations which result from the granting of the relevant rights.

---

The Company has sought to satisfy the foregoing requirements by partnering, at the operating company level, with companies demonstrating 26% HDP ownership. The Company has partnered with Mnombo in respect to the Waterberg Project and for the prospecting rights.

The Company is satisfied that Mnombo is majority-owned by HDPs. The contractual arrangements between Mnombo, the Company and the HDPs require the HDPs to maintain a minimum level of HDP ownership in Mnombo of more than 50%. However, if at any time Mnombo becomes a company that is not majority owned by HDPs, the ownership structure of the Waterberg Project and the prospecting rights and applications over the Waterberg Project may be deemed not to satisfy HDP requirements.

On September 27, 2018, the Minister of Mineral Resources announced the implementation, with immediate effect, of Mining Charter 2018.

Mining Charter 2018 sets out new and revised targets to be achieved by mining companies, the most pertinent of these being the revised BEE ownership shareholding requirements for mining rights holders. The Mining Charter 2018 no longer applies to prospecting rights. Mining Charter 2018 provides revised ownership structures for mining rights holders. New mining rights holders will be required to have a minimum 30% Black Person shareholding (which includes African, Coloured and Indian persons who are citizens of the Republic of South Africa or who became citizens of the Republic of South Africa by naturalisation before April 27, 1994, or a juristic person managed and controlled by such persons) (a 4% increase from the previously required 26% under the Mining Charter 2010), which shall include economic interest plus a corresponding percentage of voting rights, per right or in the mining company which holds the right. Applicants for mining rights whose applications have been filed and accepted before September 27, 2018 will have a period of five years from the effective date of the right within which to increase their BEE shareholding to 30%. Whether such 30% will be required to reflect the stipulated distribution to employees, communities and black entrepreneurs is not clear. Existing mining right holder who achieved a minimum of 26% BEE shareholding, or who achieved a 26% BEE shareholding but whose BEE shareholders exited prior to September 27, 2018 will be recognised as BEE ownership compliant for the duration of the mining right, but not for any period of renewal thereof.

The BEE ownership element of 30% BEE shareholding is ring fenced and requires 100% compliance at all times, other than as set out in Mining Charter 2018. The 30% BEE shareholding for new mining rights must be distributed as to

- (i) a minimum of 5% non-transferable carried interest to qualifying employees from the effective date of a mining right. The definition of qualifying employees excludes employees who already own shares in the company as a condition of their employment, except where such is a "Mining Charter" requirement;
  - (ii) a minimum of 5% non-transferable carried interest from the effective date of a mining right, or a minimum 5% equity equivalent benefit; and
  - (iii) a minimum of 20% shareholding to a BEE entrepreneur, of which 5% must preferably be for women.
-

A holder can claim a maximum of a 5% offset credit against the BEE entrepreneur allocation for beneficiation on the basis of a DMR approved "beneficiation equity equivalent plan". However, the baselines for beneficiation are still required to be determined by the Minister of Mineral Resources.

The Waterberg Project shareholders' agreement confirms the principles of BEE compliance and contemplates the potential transfer of equity and the issuance of additional equity to one or more broad based black empowerment partners at fair value in certain circumstances, including a change in law or imposition of a requirement upon Waterberg JV Co. In certain circumstances, Mnombo may be diluted with equity transferred or issued to different black empowerment shareholders.

The carried interest of 5% to each of the community and the employees must be issued to them at no cost and free of encumbrance. The costs to the right holder of such issue can be recovered from the development of the mineral asset.

An additional tax is also being raised for Human Resource Development. A right holder will be required to pay 5% of the "leviable amount", being the levy payable under the South African Skills Development Act, No. 97 of 1998, (excluding the mandatory statutory skills levy) towards essential skills development activities such as science, technology, engineering, mathematics skills as well as artisans, internships, apprentices, bursaries, literacy and numeracy skills for employees and non-employees (community members), graduate training programmes, research and development of solutions in exploration, mining, processing, technology efficiency (energy and water use in mining), beneficiation as well as environmental conservation and rehabilitation.

In regard to employment equity, the Draft Mining Charter sets minimum levels for the participation of Black Persons on all levels of company management and sets incremental targets for the procurement of local goods and services.

Compliance with a mining right holder's mine community development obligations, principally in terms of its approved social and labour plan ("**SLP**") is a ring-fenced element of Mining Charter 2018 which requires 100% annual compliance for the duration of the mining right.

Subject to conditions contained in the Company's prospecting and future mining rights, the Company may be required to obtain approval from the DMR prior to undergoing any change in its empowerment status under Mining Charter 2018. In addition, if the Company or its BEE partners are found to be in non-compliance with the requirements of Mining Charter 2018 and other BEE legislation, including failure to retain the requisite level of HDP ownership, the Company may face possible suspension or cancellation of its rights under a process governed by Section 47 of the MPRDA.

In addition, Mining Charter 2018 requires that its provisions be implemented in accordance with Implementation Guidelines, anticipated to be published around November 27, 2018. This creates greater uncertainty in measuring the Company's progress towards, and compliance with, its commitments under Mining Charter 2018 and other BEE legislation.

The Company is obliged to report on its compliance with Mining Charter 2018 against Mining Charter 2018 Scorecard, including its percentage of HDP shareholding, to the DMR on an annual basis.

When the Company is required to increase the percentage of HDP ownership in any of its operating companies or projects, the Company's interests may be diluted. In addition, it is possible that any such transactions or plans may need to be executed at a discount to the proper economic value of the Company's operating assets or it may also prove necessary for the Company to provide vendor financing or other support in respect of some or all of the consideration, which may be on non-commercial terms.





Currently, the South African Department of Trade and Industry is responsible for leading government action on the implementation of BEE initiatives under the auspices of the BEE Act and the Generic BEE Codes, while certain industries have their own transformation charters administered by the relevant government department (in this case, the DMR). The Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Amendment Act, No. 46 of 2013 (the **BEE Amendment Act**) came into operation on October 24, 2014. Among other matters, the BEE Amendment Act, through section 3(2), amends the BEE Act to make the BEE Act the overriding legislation in South Africa with regard to BEE requirements the Trumping Provision and will require all governmental bodies to apply the Generic BEE Codes or other relevant code of good practice when procuring goods and services or issuing licenses or other authorizations under any other laws, and penalize fronting or misrepresentation of BEE information. The Trumping Provision came into effect on October 24, 2015. On October 30, 2015, the South African Minister of Trade and Industry exempted the DMR from applying the Trumping Provision for a period of twelve months on the basis that the alignment of Mining Charter 2018 with the BEE Act and the Generic BEE Codes was an ongoing process. The Mining Charter 2018 purports to be aligned with the Generic BEE Codes. The Trumping Provision expired on October 31, 2016 and no new application for exemption was made. Generally speaking, the amended Generic BEE Codes will make BEE-compliance by mining companies more onerous to achieve. The DMR and industry bodies are aware of the implications of the Trumping Provision. Notwithstanding that there has been no further extension of the exemption in respect of the Trumping Provision, to date, the DMR continues to apply the provisions of Mining Charter 2010 and Mining Charter 2018, as applicable, and not the Generic BEE Codes. See Item 4.B. South African Regulatory Framework - Black Economic Empowerment in the South African Mining Industry, and Mining Charter.

The Generic BEE Codes and Mining Charter 2018 require Mnombo to be 51% held and controlled by HDPs to qualify it as a black-controlled company or a "BEE Entrepreneur and hence a qualified BEE entity. Mnombo is presently 50.1% owned and controlled by HDPs.

If the Company is unable to achieve or maintain its empowered status under Mining Charter 2018 or comply with any other BEE legislation or policies, it may not be able to maintain its existing prospecting and mining rights and/or acquire any new rights; and therefore, would be obliged to suspend or dispose of some or all of its operations in South Africa, which would likely have a material adverse effect on the Company's business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Socio-economic instability in South Africa or regionally, including the risk of resource nationalism, may have an adverse effect on the Company's operations and profits.***

The Company has ownership interests in a significant project in South Africa. As a result, it is subject to political and economic risks relating to South Africa, which could affect an investment in the Company. Downgrades, and potential further downgrades, to South Africa's sovereign currency ratings by international ratings agencies would likely adversely affect the value of the Rand relative to the Canadian or U.S. Dollar. South Africa was transformed into a democracy in 1994. The government policies aimed at redressing the disadvantages suffered by the majority of citizens under previous governments may impact the Company's South African business. In addition to political issues, South Africa faces many challenges in overcoming substantial differences in levels of economic development among its people. Large parts of the South African population do not have access to adequate education, health care, housing and other services, including water and electricity. The Company also faces a number of risks from deliberate, malicious or criminal acts relating to these inequalities, including theft, fraud, bribery and corruption. On February 15, 2018 the new president of South Africa was inaugurated. He has vowed to take a hard line against graft, corruption and government excesses.

---

The Company is also subject to the risk of resource nationalism, which encompasses a range of measures, such as expropriation or taxation, whereby governments increase their economic interest in natural resources, with or without compensation. Although wholesale nationalization was rejected by the ruling party, the African National Congress (the **ANC**), leading into the 2014 national elections, a resolution adopted by the ANC on nationalization calls for state intervention in the economy, including state ownership. A wide range of stakeholders have proposed ways in which the State could extract greater economic value from the South African mining industry. A call for resource nationalization has also been made by the Economic Freedom Fighters, a political party under the leadership of Julius Malema.

The Company cannot predict the future political, social and economic direction of South Africa or the manner in which government will attempt to address the country's inequalities. Actions taken by the South African government, or by its people without the sanction of law, could have a material adverse effect on the Company's business. Furthermore, there has been regional, political and economic instability in countries north of South Africa, which may affect South Africa. Such factors may have a negative impact on the Company's ability to own, operate and manage its South African mining projects.

***Labour disruptions and increased labour costs could have an adverse effect on the Company's results of operations and financial condition.***

Although the Company's employees are not unionized at this time, trade unions could have a significant impact on the Company's labour relations, as well as on social and political reforms. There is a risk that strikes or other types of conflict with unions or employees may occur at any of the Company's operations, particularly where the labour force is unionized. Labour disruptions may be used to advocate labour, political or social goals in the future. For example, labour disruptions may occur in sympathy with strikes or labour unrest in other sectors of the economy. South African employment law sets out minimum terms and conditions of employment for employees, which form the benchmark for all employment contracts. Disruptions in the Company's business due to strikes or further developments in South African labour laws may increase the Company's costs or alter its relationship with its employees and trade unions, which may have an adverse effect on the Company's financial condition and operations. South Africa has recently experienced widespread illegal strikes and violence.

***Changes in South African State royalties where many of the Company's mineral reserves are located could have an adverse effect on the Company's results of operations and its financial condition.***

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Royalty Act, No. 28 of 2008 (the **Royalty Act**) effectively came into operation on May 1, 2009. The Royalty Act establishes a variable royalty rate regime, in which the prevailing royalty rate for the year of assessment is assessed against the gross sales of the extractor during the year. The royalty rate is calculated based on the profitability of the mine (earnings before interest and taxes) and varies depending on whether the mineral is transferred in refined or unrefined form. For mineral resources transferred in unrefined form, the minimum royalty rate is 0.5% of gross sales and the maximum royalty rate is 7% of gross sales. For mineral resources transferred in refined form, the maximum royalty rate is 5% of gross sales. The royalty will be a tax-deductible expense. The royalty becomes payable when the mineral resource is transferred, which refers to the disposal of a mineral resource, the export of a mineral resource or the consumption, theft, destruction or loss of a mineral resource. The Royalty Act allows the holder of a mining right to enter into an agreement with the tax authorities to fix the percentage royalty that will be payable in respect of all mining operations carried out in respect of that resource for as long as the extractor holds the right. The holder of a mining right may withdraw from such agreement at any time.

---

The feasibility studies covering the Company's South African projects made certain assumptions related to the expected royalty rates under the Royalty Act. If and when the Company begins earning revenue from its South African mining projects, and if the royalties under the Royalty Act differ from those assumed in the feasibility studies, this new royalty could have a material and adverse impact on the economic viability of the Company's projects in South Africa, as well as on the Company's prospects, financial condition and results of operations.

***Interruptions, shortages or cuts in the supply of electricity or water could lead to disruptions in production and a reduction in the Company's operating capacity.***

The Company procures all of the electricity necessary for its operations from ESKOM Holdings Limited, South Africa's state-owned electricity utility ( **ESKOM** ), and no significant alternative sources of supply are available to it. ESKOM has suffered from prolonged underinvestment in new generating capacity which, combined with increased demand, led to a period of electricity shortages. ESKOM has now established sufficient capacity to meet South Africa's current requirements but remains severely under-capitalized. Since 2008, ESKOM has invested heavily in new base load power generation capacity. Its principal project, a power station known as Medupi, has been subject to delays, with the last unit scheduled for commissioning in 2019. ESKOM is heavily dependent on coal to fuel its electricity plants. Accordingly, if coal mining companies experience labour unrest or disruptions to production (which have occurred historically in South Africa, including a coal strike by approximately 30,000 National Union of Mineworkers members which lasted for approximately one week in October 2015), or if heavy rains, particularly during the summer months in South Africa, adversely impact coal production or coal supplies, ESKOM may have difficulty supplying sufficient electricity supply to the Company.

The Company is dependent on the availability of water in its areas of operations. Shifting rainfall patterns and increasing demands on the existing water supply have caused water shortages in the Company's areas of operations.

If electricity or water supplies are insufficient or unreliable, the Company may be unable to operate as anticipated, which may disrupt production and reduce revenues.

***Characteristics of and changes in the tax systems in South Africa could materially adversely affect the Company's business, financial condition and results of operations.***

The Company's subsidiaries pay different types of governmental taxes in South Africa, including corporation tax, payroll taxes, VAT, state royalties, various forms of duties, dividend withholding tax and interest withholding tax. The tax regime in South Africa is subject to change. After having published a number of papers on the introduction of a carbon tax, the South African government released the Second Draft Carbon Tax Bill 2017 (the **Bill** ) published in December 2017, together with an Explanatory Memorandum in respect of the Bill (the **Explanatory Memorandum** ). The Bill was open for comment until March 9, 2018 and is now being considered by the South African Parliament. On November 12, 2018 The National Treasury published the *Draft Regulation on the Carbon Offset* for a second round of public comment and further consultation. The South African Minister of Finance recently announced that carbon tax will be implemented from June 1, 2019. See Item 4.B. Business Overview - *Carbon Tax/Climate Change Policies*.

---

The ANC held a policy conference in June 2012 at which the State Intervention in the Minerals Sector report (the **SIMS Report**) commissioned by the ANC was debated. The SIMS Report includes a proposal for a super tax of 50% of all profits above a 15% return on investment, which would apply in respect of all metals and minerals. If a super tax is implemented, the Company may realize lower after-tax profits and cash flows from its current mining operations and may decide not to pursue certain new projects, as such a tax could render these opportunities uneconomic.

It is also possible that the Company could become subject to taxation in South Africa that is not currently anticipated, which could have a material adverse effect on its business, financial condition and results of operations.

***Community relations may affect the Company's business.***

Maintaining community support through a positive relationship with the communities in which the Company operates is critical to continuing successful exploration and development. As a business in the mining industry, the Company may come under pressure in the jurisdictions in which it explores or develops, to demonstrate that other stakeholders benefit and will continue to benefit from the Company's commercial activities. The Company may face opposition with respect to its current and future development and exploration projects which could materially adversely affect its business, results of operations, financial condition and common share price.

Under the Mining Charter 2018 there is a greater focus on mine community development. A right holder must meaningfully contribute towards mine community development in keeping with the principles of the social license to operate. A right holder must develop its Social and Labour Plan ("SLP"), in consultation with relevant municipalities, mine communities, traditional authorities and affected stakeholders, and identify developmental priorities of mine communities. The identified developmental priorities must be contained in the SLP. See Item 4.B. ***South African Regulatory Framework - Mining Charter.***

***South African foreign exchange controls may limit repatriation of profits.***

The Company will need to repatriate funds from its foreign subsidiaries to fulfill its business plans and make payments on the LMM Facility. Since commencing business in South Africa, the Company has loaned or invested approximately CDN\$843 million (net of repayments) as at August 31, 2018 into PTM RSA in South Africa. The Company obtained approval from the SARB in advance for its investments into South Africa. The Company anticipates that it will loan the majority of the proceeds from an offering to PTM RSA with the advance approval of the SARB. Although the Company is not aware of any law or regulation that would prevent the repatriation of funds it has loaned or invested into South Africa back to the Company in Canada, no assurance can be given that the Company will be able to repatriate funds back to Canada in a timely manner or without incurring tax payments or other costs when doing so, due to legal restrictions or tax requirements at local subsidiary levels or at the parent company level, which costs could be material.

South Africa's exchange control regulations restrict the export of capital from South Africa. Although the Company is not itself subject to South African exchange control regulations, these regulations do restrict the ability of the Company's South African subsidiaries to raise and deploy capital outside the country, to borrow money in currencies other than the Rand and to hold foreign currency. Exchange control regulations could make it difficult for the Company's South African subsidiaries to: (a) export capital from South Africa; (b) hold foreign currency or incur indebtedness denominated in foreign currencies without approval of the relevant South African exchange control authorities; (c) acquire an interest in a foreign venture without approval of the relevant South African exchange control authorities and compliance with certain investment criteria; and (d) repatriate to South Africa profits of foreign operations. While the South African government has relaxed exchange controls in recent years, and continues to do so, it is difficult to predict whether or how it will further relax or abolish exchange control measures in the foreseeable future. There can be no assurance that restrictions on repatriation of earnings from South Africa will not be imposed

on the Company in the future.

---

*The Company's land in South Africa could be subject to land restitution claims or land expropriation which could impose significant costs and burdens.*

To the extent that the Company's operating subsidiaries acquire privately held land, such land could be subject to land restitution claims under the Restitution of Land Rights Act, No. 22 of 1994, as amended (the **Land Claims Act**) and the Restitution of Land Rights Amendment Act 15 of 2014 (the **Restitution Amendment Act**), which took effect on July 1, 2014. Under the Land Claims Act and the Restitution Amendment Act, any person who was dispossessed of rights in land in South Africa after June 19, 1913 as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices without payment of just and equitable compensation, and who (subject to the promulgation of further legislation) lodges a claim on or before June 30, 2019, is granted certain remedies. A successful claimant may be granted either return of the dispossessed land (referred to as **restoration**) or equitable redress (which includes the granting of an appropriate right in alternative state-owned land, payment of compensation or **alternative relief**). If restoration is claimed, the Land Claims Act requires the feasibility of such restoration to be considered. Restoration of land may only be given in circumstances where a claimant can use the land productively with the feasibility of restoration dependent on the value of the property.

The South African Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform may not acquire ownership of land for restitution purposes without a court order unless an agreement has been reached between the affected parties. The Land Claims Act also entitles the South African Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform to acquire ownership of land by way of expropriation either for claimants who are entitled to restitution of land, or, in respect of land over which no claim has been lodged but the acquisition of which is directly related to or affected by such claim, will promote restitution of land to claimants or alternative relief. Expropriation would be subject to provisions of legislation and the South African Constitution which provide, in general, for just and equitable compensation.

However, the ANC has declared its intention to proceed with an orderly process of land expropriation, potentially without compensation being paid to land owners. The form of this process remains unclear.

There is no guarantee, however, that any privately held land rights could not become subject to acquisition by the state without the Company's agreement, or that the Company would be adequately compensated for the loss of any land rights. Any such claims could have a negative impact on the Company's South African projects and therefore an adverse effect on its business, operating results and financial condition.

---

**Risks Relating to the Company's Common Shares**

*The Company has never paid dividends and does not expect to do so in the foreseeable future.*

The Company has not paid any dividends since incorporation and it has no plans to pay dividends in the foreseeable future. The Company's directors will determine if and when dividends should be declared and paid in the future based on the Company's financial position at the relevant time. In addition, the Company's ability to declare and pay dividends may be affected by the South African government's exchange controls. See Item 4.B. South African Regulatory Framework Exchange Control.

*The Common Share price has been volatile in recent years.*

In recent years, the securities markets in the United States and Canada have experienced a high level of price and volume volatility, and the market price of securities of many companies, particularly those considered exploration or development-stage mining companies, have experienced wide fluctuations in price which have not necessarily been related to the operating performance, underlying asset values or prospects of such companies. There can be no assurance that continual fluctuations in price will not occur.

The factors influencing such volatility include macroeconomic developments in North America and globally, and market perceptions of the attractiveness of particular industries. The price of the Company's Common Shares is also likely to be significantly affected by short term changes in precious metal prices or other mineral prices, currency exchange fluctuations and the Company's financial condition or results of operations as reflected in its earnings reports. Other factors unrelated to the performance of the Company that may have an effect on the price of the Company's Common Shares and other securities include the following:

the extent of analyst coverage available to investors concerning the business of the Company may be limited if investment banks with research capabilities do not follow the Company's securities;

lessening in trading volume and general market interest in the Company's securities may affect an investor's ability to trade significant numbers of securities of the Company;

changes to South African laws and regulations might have a negative effect on the development prospects, timelines or relationships for the Company's material properties;

the size of the Company's public float may limit the ability of some institutions to invest in the Company's securities; and

a substantial decline in the price of the securities of the Company that persists for a significant period of time could cause the Company's securities to be delisted from an exchange, further reducing market liquidity.

Securities class action litigation often has been brought against companies following periods of volatility in the market price of their securities. The Company may in the future be the target of similar litigation. Securities litigation could result in substantial costs and damages and divert management's attention and resources.

*The Company may be unable to maintain compliance with NYSE American and TSX continued listing standards and the Company's Common Shares may be delisted from the NYSE American and TSX equities markets, which would likely cause the liquidity and market price of the Common Shares to decline.*

---



The Company's Common Shares are currently listed on the NYSE American and the TSX. The Company is subject to the continued listing criteria of the NYSE American and the TSX and such exchanges will consider suspending dealings in, or delisting, securities of an issuer that does not meet its continued listing standards. In order to maintain the listings, the Company must maintain certain objective standards, such as share prices, shareholders' equity, market capitalization and, share distribution targets. In addition to objective standards, the NYSE American may delist the securities of any issuer, among other reasons, if the issuer sells or disposes of principal operating assets, ceases to be an operating company or has discontinued a substantial portion of its operations or business for any reason or the NYSE American otherwise determines that the securities are unsuitable for continued trading. The Company may not be able to satisfy these standards.

On May 23, 2018 the Company received a letter from NYSE American stating that it was not in compliance with the continued listing standards as set forth in Sections 1003(a)(i), 1003(a)(ii) and 1003(a)(iii) of the NYSE American Company Guide (the "Company Guide") with respect to stockholders' equity, or in Section 1003(f)(v) of the Company Guide with respect to the selling price of the Company's Common Shares. On June 21, 2018, the Exchange notified the Company that it had accepted the Company's plan of compliance and granted the Company an extension until November 23, 2018 to regain compliance with the requirements of Section 1003(f)(v) of the Company Guide and until October 10, 2019 to regain compliance with Sections 1003(a)(i), 1003(a)(ii) and 1003(a)(iii) of the Company Guide. The Company is not currently in compliance with NYSE American listing standards, but its listing is being continued pursuant to an exception. The Company will be subject to periodic review by Exchange staff during the extension period. If the Company is not in compliance with the Company Guide by the applicable deadlines or if the Company does not make progress consistent with the plan during the plan period, Exchange staff will initiate delisting proceedings as appropriate.

Delisting of the Common Shares may result in a breach or default under certain of the Company's agreements. Without limiting the foregoing, a TSX delisting would result in a default (unless any required waivers could be obtained) under certain or all of the Company's outstanding indebtedness, which would have a material adverse impact on the Company. See "Risks Relating to the Company". A delisting of the Company's Common Shares could also adversely affect the Company's reputation, the Company's ability to raise funds through the sale of equity or securities convertible into equity and the terms of any such fundraising, the liquidity and market price of the Company's Common Shares and the ability of broker-dealers to purchase the Common Shares.

***The Company intends to complete the 2018 Share Consolidation of its outstanding Common Shares in order to meet the listing requirements of the NYSE American.***

Due to the low selling price of the Common Shares, on May 23, 2018, the Company received a letter from the NYSE American stating that it is not in compliance with the continued listing standards set forth in Section 1003(f)(v) of the Company Guide relating to the trading price of the Company's Common Shares. The NYSE American granted the Company until November 23, 2018 to regain compliance with such requirements. After consulting with the NYSE American staff, the Company announced on November 20, 2018 its intention to effect the 2018 Share Consolidation effective December 13, 2018.

Pursuant to Section 1003(f)(v) of the NYSE American Company Guide, the NYSE American could take action to delist the Company's Common Shares in the event that its Common Shares trade at levels viewed as abnormally low for a substantial period of time. The Company cannot be certain that the market price of its Common Shares following the 2018 Share Consolidation will remain at the level required for the period of time required for listing or for continuing compliance with that requirement. A share consolidation may be viewed negatively by the market and could lead to a decrease in the Company's overall market capitalization. If the per share market price does not increase proportionately as a result of the 2018 Share Consolidation, then the value of the company as measured by market capitalization could be reduced significantly. If the Company successfully completes the 2018 Share Consolidation the

number of the Company's Common Shares that is outstanding will be reduced, and the liquidity of the Common Shares could be adversely affected.

---

***The exercise of outstanding stock options or warrants will result in dilution to the holders of Common Shares.***

The issuance of Common Shares upon the exercise of the Company's outstanding stock options and warrants will result in dilution to the interests of shareholders, and may reduce the trading price of the Common Shares. Additional stock options and warrants to purchase Common Shares may be issued in the future. Exercises of these securities, or even the potential of their exercise, may have an adverse effect on the trading price of the Company's Common Shares. The holders of stock options or warrants are likely to exercise them at times when the market price of the Company's Common Shares exceeds the exercise price of the securities. Accordingly, the issuance of Common Shares upon exercise of the stock options and warrants will likely result in dilution of the equity represented by the then outstanding Common Shares held by other shareholders. The holders of stock options or warrants can be expected to exercise or convert them at a time when the Company would, in all likelihood, be able to obtain any needed capital on terms which are more favorable to the Company than the exercise terms provided by these stock options and warrants.

***Future sales, conversion of senior subordinated notes or issuances of equity securities could decrease the value of the Common Shares, dilute investors' voting power and reduce the Company's earnings per share.***

The Company may sell equity securities in offerings (including through the sale of debt securities convertible into equity securities) and may issue additional equity securities to finance operations, exploration, development, acquisitions or other projects.

On June 30, 2017 the Company issued \$20 million aggregate principal amount of 6 7/8% convertible senior subordinated notes due 2022 (the "Notes"). The Notes bear interest at a rate of 6 7/8% per annum, payable semi-annually on January 1 and July 1 of each year, beginning on January 1, 2018, in cash or at the election of the Company, in Common Shares of the Company or a combination of cash and Common Shares, and will mature on July 1, 2022, unless earlier repurchased, redeemed or converted. Subject to certain exceptions, the Notes are convertible at any time at the option of the holder, and may be settled, at the Company's election, in cash, Common Shares, or a combination of cash and Common Shares. If any Notes are converted on or prior to the three and one-half year anniversary of the issuance date, the holder of the Notes will also be entitled to receive an amount equal to the remaining interest payments on the converted Notes to the three and one-half year anniversary of the issuance date, discounted by 2%, payable in Common Shares.

On May 15, 2018 the Company announced the issue of 117,453,862 Units in a public offering at a price of \$0.15 per Unit for gross proceeds of approximately \$17.62 million. Each Unit consisted of one common share of Platinum Group Metals and one common share purchase warrant of Platinum Group Metals. Each warrant will entitle the holder thereof to purchase one common share at a price of \$0.17 for a term of 18 months until November 15, 2019. In connection with the closing of the public offering of Units, the Company entered into a warrant indenture governing the terms of the warrants with Computershare Trust Company of Canada as warrant agent. Such terms include, without limitation, that a warrant holder who purchased such warrants in the Company's public offering of the Units shall not have the right to exercise any portion of a warrant to the extent that, after giving effect to such issuance after exercise, the warrant holder (together with the warrant holder's affiliates, and any other persons acting as a group together with the warrant holder or any of the warrant holder's affiliates), would beneficially own in excess of 19.9% of the number of Common Shares outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of Common Shares issuable upon exercise of the warrant in question.

---

On May 15, 2018 the Company announced the closing of a strategic investment in the Company by Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited, a South African Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Company ( **HCI** ) on a private placement basis. HCI subscribed, through a subsidiary, for 15,090,999 Units at a price of US\$0.15 per Unit for gross proceeds of \$2,263,649.85. Each Unit consists of one common share and one common share purchase warrant, with each common share purchase warrant allowing HCI to purchase one further common share of the Company at a price of \$0.17 per share for a period of 18 months until November 15, 2018.

The Company cannot predict the timing or amount of conversions of Notes, exercises of stock options or warrants, or the size or terms of future issuances of equity securities or securities convertible into equity securities or the effect, if any, that future issuances and sales of the securities will have on the market price of the Company's Common Shares. In addition, the conversion price of the Notes is subject to adjustment in certain circumstances. Any transaction involving the issuance of previously authorized but unissued Common Shares, or securities convertible into Common Shares, would result in dilution, possibly substantial, to shareholders. Exercises of presently outstanding stock options may also result in dilution to shareholders.

The board of directors of the Company has the authority to authorize certain offers and sales of the securities without the vote of, or prior notice to, shareholders. Based on the need for additional capital to fund expected expenditures and growth, it is likely that the Company will issue the securities to provide such capital. Such additional issuances may involve the issuance of a significant number of Common Shares at prices less than the current market price.

Sales of substantial amounts of securities, or the availability of the securities for sale, could adversely affect the prevailing market prices for the securities and dilute investors' earnings per share. A decline in the market prices of the securities could impair the Company's ability to raise additional capital through the sale of additional securities should the Company desire to do so.

***Judgments based upon the civil liability provisions of the United States federal securities laws may be difficult to enforce.***

The ability of investors to enforce judgments of United States courts based upon the civil liability provisions of the United States federal securities laws against the Company, its directors and officers, and the experts named herein may be limited due to the fact that the Company is incorporated outside of the United States, a majority of such directors, officers, and experts reside outside of the United States and a substantial portion of the assets of the Company and said persons are located outside the United States. There is uncertainty as to whether foreign courts would: (a) enforce judgments of United States courts obtained against the Company, its directors and officers or the experts named herein predicated upon the civil liability provisions of the United States federal securities laws; or (b) entertain original actions brought in Canadian courts against the Company or such persons predicated upon the federal securities laws of the United States, as such laws may conflict with Canadian laws.

---

*There may be adverse Canadian tax consequences for a foreign controlled Canadian company that acquires the securities of the Company.*

Certain adverse tax considerations may be applicable to a shareholder that is a corporation resident in Canada and is, or becomes, controlled by a non-resident corporation for the purposes of the foreign affiliate dumping rules in the *Income Tax Act* (Canada) (the **Tax Act**). Such shareholders should consult their tax advisors with respect to the consequences of acquiring the securities.

*The Company may be a passive foreign investment company for its current and future tax years, which may have adverse U.S. federal income tax consequences for U.S. investors.*

Potential investors in the securities who are U.S. taxpayers should be aware that the Company may be classified as a passive foreign investment company or PFIC for its current tax year ending August 31, 2019 and may be a PFIC in future tax years. If the Company is a PFIC for any tax year during a U.S. taxpayer's holding period of the securities, then such U.S. taxpayer generally will be required to treat any gain realized upon a disposition of the securities or any so-called excess distribution received on the securities, as ordinary income, and to pay an interest charge on a portion of such gain or excess distribution. In certain circumstances, the sum of the tax and the interest charge may exceed the total amount of proceeds realized on the disposition, or the amount of excess distribution received, by the U.S. taxpayer. Subject to certain limitations, these tax consequences may be mitigated if a U.S. taxpayer makes a timely and effective qualified electing fund or QEF election (a **QEF Election**) under Section 1295 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the **Code**) or a mark-to-market election (a **Mark-to-Market Election**) under Section 1296 of the Code. Subject to certain limitations, such elections may be made with respect to shares of Common Stock. A U.S. taxpayer who makes a timely and effective QEF Election generally must report on a current basis its share of the Company's net capital gain and ordinary earnings for any year in which the Company is a PFIC, whether or not the Company distributes any amounts to its shareholders. However, U.S. taxpayers should be aware that there can be no assurance that the Company will satisfy the record keeping requirements that apply to a qualified electing fund, or that the Company will supply U.S. taxpayers with information that such U.S. taxpayers require to report under the QEF Election rules, in the event that the Company is a PFIC and a U.S. taxpayer wishes to make a QEF Election. Thus, U.S. taxpayers may not be able to make a QEF Election with respect to their shares of Common Stock. A U.S. taxpayer who makes the Mark to Market Election generally must include as ordinary income each year the excess of the fair market value of the shares of Common Stock over the taxpayer's basis therein. This paragraph is qualified in its entirety by the discussion below under the heading **Certain United States Federal Income Tax Considerations - Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules**. Each potential investor who is a U.S. taxpayer should consult its own tax advisor regarding the tax consequences of the PFIC rules and the acquisition, ownership, and disposition of the shares of Common Stock.

---

*The Company is a non-accelerated filer and the Company cannot be certain whether the reduced disclosure requirements applicable to non-accelerated filers will make the securities less attractive to investors.*

The Company is a non-accelerated filer and intends to take advantage of exemptions from various requirements that are applicable to other public companies that are non-accelerated filers, including not being required to comply with the auditor attestation requirements of Section 404 of the U.S. Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 for so long as the Company is a non-accelerated filer. The Company cannot predict if investors will find the securities less attractive because the Company's independent auditors will not have attested to the effectiveness of the Company's internal controls. If some investors find the securities less attractive as a result of the Company's independent auditors not attesting to the effectiveness of the Company's internal controls or as a result of other exemptions that the Company may take advantage of, or if the Company's independent auditors do not determine the internal control over financial reporting to be effective when required after it ceases to be a non-accelerated filer, the trading market for the Company's securities and the value of the securities may be adversely affected.

*The Company's growth, future profitability and ability to obtain financing may be impacted by global financial conditions.*

Global financial conditions continue to be characterized by extreme volatility. In recent years, global markets have been adversely impacted by the credit crisis that began in 2008, the European debt crisis and significant fluctuations in fuel and energy costs and metals prices. Many industries, including the mining industry, have been impacted by these market conditions. Global financial conditions remain subject to sudden and rapid destabilizations in response to economic shocks. A slowdown in the financial markets or other economic conditions, including but not limited to consumer spending, employment rates, business conditions, inflation, fuel and energy costs, consumer debt levels, lack of available credit, the state of the financial markets, interest rates and tax rates, may adversely affect the Company's growth and profitability. Future economic shocks may be precipitated by a number of causes, including debt crises, a continued rise in the price of oil and other commodities, the volatility of metal prices, geopolitical instability, terrorism, the devaluation and volatility of global stock markets, health crises and natural disasters. Any sudden or rapid destabilization of global economic conditions could impact the Company's ability to obtain equity or debt financing in the future on terms favourable to the Company or at all. In such an event, the Company's operations and financial condition could be adversely impacted.

#### **ITEM 4. INFORMATION ON THE COMPANY**

##### **A. History and Development of Platinum Group**

The Company is a corporation organized under the laws of British Columbia, Canada. The Company was formed on February 18, 2002 under the *Company Act* (British Columbia) pursuant to an order of the Supreme Court of British Columbia approving an amalgamation between Platinum Group Metals Ltd. and New Millennium Metals Corporation. On January 25, 2005 the Company was transitioned under the *Business Corporations Act* (British Columbia) (the **BCBCA**).

The Company's head office is located at Suite 788 - 550 Burrard Street, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, V6C 2B5 and its telephone number is (604) 899-5450. The Company's registered office is located at Gowling WLG (Canada) LLP, Suite 2300 - 550 Burrard Street, Vancouver, British Columbia, Canada, V6C 2B5.

---

Information regarding the Company's organizational structure is provided under Item 4.C. Organizational Structure.

Since its formation, the Company has been engaged in the acquisition, exploration and development of platinum and palladium properties. PTM currently holds interests in platinum properties in the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex in South Africa and in Canada. The Company's business is currently conducted primarily in South Africa.

At present the Company's sole material mineral property is the Waterberg Project. A planned DFS is now underway, targeting a large, thick PGM resource with the objective to model a large-scale, fully-mechanized mine. A substantial portion of the Waterberg Project's prospecting area remains unexplored.

In addition to the information provided below regarding the Company's principal capital expenditures and divestitures during the last three financial years, see Item 5.B. Liquidity and Capital Resources Equity Financings for information on use of proceeds from equity financings.

### Recent Developments

The following is a summary of the Company's noteworthy developments since September 1, 2017:

#### September 2017 *Corporatization of Waterberg Project*

On September 21, 2017 the Company completed the planned corporatization of the Waterberg Project by the transfer of all Waterberg Project prospecting permits held in trust by PTM RSA into Waterberg JV Co. Effective September 21, 2017 Waterberg JV Co. owned 100% of the prospecting rights comprising the entire Waterberg Project area and Waterberg JV Co. was owned 45.65% by PTM RSA, 28.35% by JOGMEC and 26% by Mnombo.

#### November 2017 *Implats Transaction*

On November 6, 2017, the Company, along with Waterberg JV Co., JOGMEC and Mnombo completed the first phase of a transaction involving the Waterberg Project initially announced on October 16, 2017 with Implats (the **Implats Transaction**) whereby Implats purchased an aggregate 15.0% equity interest in Waterberg JV Co. (the **Initial Purchase**) \$30 million. The Company received consideration of \$17.2 million from Implats for the sale of an 8.6% interest in the Waterberg Project and JOGMEC received \$12.8 million for the sale of a 6.4% interest in the Waterberg Project.

Pursuant to the Implats Transaction, Implats was also granted an option (the **Purchase and Development Option**), after the completion by Waterberg JV Co. and approval by Waterberg JV Co. or Implats of the planned DFS ( **DFS Approval** ), the preparation of which is currently underway and which is expected to be completed in the first part of 2019, to increase its stake to 50.01% through additional share purchases from JOGMEC for an amount of \$34.8 million and earn-in arrangements for \$130 million paid to Waterberg JV Co. to fund development work on the Waterberg Project, as well as a right of first refusal to smelt and refine Waterberg concentrate.

---

In the event of certain breaches of agreement, insolvency events or events that would entitle a Waterberg JV Co. shareholder to acquire or dispose of any Waterberg JV Co. shares (other than transfers to certain permitted transferees) prior to the DFS Approval, Implats may, by notice to the other Waterberg JV Co. shareholders of such event, cause the Purchase and Development Option to instead become exercisable from the date of such notice. Subject to certain exceptions, the Purchase and Development Option will be exercisable for a period of at least 90 business days from the date of such notice. Upon exercising the Purchase and Development Option, Implats will have the right to appoint the manager of Waterberg JV Co.

The issuance and transfer of Waterberg JV Co. shares to Implats following the exercise of the Purchase and Development Option is subject to the satisfaction or waiver of certain conditions precedent, including but not limited to: the receipt of required regulatory approvals, including under the South African Competition Act, 89 of 1998, and the MPRDA; and within 180 business days after its exercise of the Purchase and Development Option, Implats confirming the salient terms of a development and mining financing for the Waterberg Project (the **Development and Mining Financing**), and providing a signed financing term sheet, subject only to final credit approval and documentation. If Implats exercises the Purchase and Development Option and such transactions are consummated, Implats will have primary control of Waterberg JV Co., including the power to approve matters submitted to the board of directors. Certain matters would continue to require the approval of Waterberg JV Co. shareholders by a 75% vote, including the approval of JOGMEC in certain circumstances.

Should Implats complete the Purchase and Development Option and increase its interest in Waterberg JV Co. to 50.01%, Mnombo's 26% interest would be maintained by Waterberg JV Co. issuing additional shares to Mnombo at a nominal price, Platinum Group would retain a direct 18.99% interest, and JOGMEC would hold a 5% interest. Platinum Group's direct and indirect (through its shareholding of Mnombo) interests in Waterberg JV Co. would total 31.96%. Following Implats' exercise of the Purchase and Development Option and the completion of its earn-in spending, all project partners would be required to participate and fund the development of the Waterberg Project on a pro-rata basis.

The Implats Transaction agreements provide for the transfer of equity and the issuance of additional equity to one or more broad based black empowerment partners, at fair value. If, prior to the consummation of the Purchase and Development Option, a BEE dilution event has occurred (i.e., an event resulting in the issuance of additional equity to a BEE shareholder, thereby reducing the interests of non-BEE shareholders), the amount of equity to be purchased by Implats and the purchase price for such equity upon the exercise of the Purchase and Development Option will be adjusted pursuant to formulas set forth in the Purchase and Development Option.

---



If Implats does not elect to exercise the Purchase and Development Option and arrange the Development and Mining Financing, Implats will retain a 15.0% interest and Platinum Group will retain a 50.02% direct and indirect interest in the Waterberg Project.

Implats has also acquired a right of first refusal to enter into an offtake agreement, on commercial arms-length terms, for the smelting and refining of mineral products from the Waterberg Project. JOGMEC will retain a right to receive platinum, palladium, rhodium, gold, ruthenium, iridium, copper and nickel in refined mineral products at the volume produced from the Waterberg Project.

Implats, JOGMEC, Mnombo and Platinum Group (as operator of the Waterberg Project) have agreed to the detailed scope of work for the DFS. The DFS will investigate two options - a 600,000 tonne per month mine (744,000 ounces PGEs per year) as outlined in the pre-feasibility study completed by the Company in October 2016 (the **2016 PFS**), and a second lower capital option at 250,000 to 350,000 tonnes per month. The selection of the DFS team was also agreed and a tender process managed by a third party specialist for engineering groups has been completed. Following the closing of the Implats Transaction, which occurred on November 6, 2017, DRA Projects SA (Proprietary) Limited (**DRA**) was appointed for metallurgy, plant design, infrastructure and cost estimation. Stantec Consulting International LLC (**Stantec**) was appointed for underground mining engineering and design and reserve estimation.

The Sprott Lenders and LMM provided their consent to the Implats Transaction, which consents were conditional on the satisfaction of certain conditions by the Company including the provision of a \$5 million bridge loan (the **Bridge Loan**) by Sprott Lenders to provide working capital to the Company until closing of the Implats Transaction. The Bridge Loan was repaid by the Company on November 17, 2017.

#### ***Maseve Sale Transaction***

On November 23, 2017, the Company entered into definitive agreements to sell its rights and interests in Maseve to Royal Bafokeng Platinum Limited (**RBPlat**) in a transaction valued at approximately \$74.0 million, payable as \$62.0 million in cash and \$12.0 million in RBPlat ordinary shares (the **Maseve Sale Transaction**).

A deposit in escrow was paid by RBPlat in the amount of Rand 41,367,300 (\$3.0 million equivalent) on October 9, 2017.

The Maseve Sale Transaction was completed in April 2018. The Maseve Sale Transaction occurred in two stages:

RBPlat paid Maseve \$58 million in cash to acquire the concentrator plant and certain surface assets of the Maseve Mine, including an appropriate allocation for power and water (the **Plant Sale Transaction**). Maseve retained ownership of the mining right, power and water rights as well as certain surface rights and improvements.

---

The payment received by Maseve was remitted to the Company's South African subsidiary, PTM RSA, in partial settlement of loans due to PTM RSA. This first payment due from RBPlat was conditional upon the satisfaction or waiver of certain conditions precedent, including but not limited to the negotiation and execution of definitive agreements, the approval, or confirmed obligation, of the holder of the remaining 17.1% equity interest in Maseve, Africa Wide Mineral Prospecting and Exploration Proprietary Limited, the approval of PTM's secured lenders, the approval of the South African Competition Commission ( **Competition Approval** ), and completion of due diligence which may result in additional conditions.

RBPlat paid PTM RSA \$7.0 million in Common Shares of RBPlat plus approximately \$4.0 million in cash to acquire PTM RSA's remaining loans due from Maseve, and paid PTM RSA and Africa Wide, in proportion to their respective equity interests in Maseve, a further \$5.0 million by way of issuance of Common Shares of RBPlat to acquire 100% of the equity in Maseve (the **Share Transaction** ). The second stage of the transaction was conditional upon implementation of the Plant Sale Transaction and, among other conditions, obtaining all requisite regulatory approvals including but not limited to the Minister of Mineral Resources granting consent to the transfer of the Maseve mining right to RBPlat in terms of section 11 of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act ( **Ministerial Consent** ) within three years after the Competition Approval.

The RBPlat ordinary shares issued pursuant to the Share Transaction were priced at their 30-day volume weighted average price of the RBPlat ordinary shares on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange calculated on market close on the day preceding the announcement.

RBPlat was granted a management contract for the Maseve Mine and for carrying out care and maintenance services during the period between the date of grant of the Competition Approval and the date of Ministerial Consent. The Company was responsible for 50% of care and maintenance costs after Competition Approval until the earlier of the date of Ministerial Consent and the date upon which RBPlat utilizes the surface infrastructure of the Maseve Mine for its own purposes.

PTM's proceeds from the sale of Maseve and the Maseve Mine were repaid to secured lenders who were collectively owed approximately \$89 million in principal and accrued interest at August 31, 2017. Sprott and LMM agreed to terms and conditions, upon completion of which, they provided their consent to the Maseve Sale Transaction.

### ***December 2017 Definitive Feasibility Study Update I***

On December 11, 2017 the Company announced that the ongoing DFS for the Waterberg Project was advancing under the direction of the Technical Committee appointed by Waterberg JV Co. and comprised of representatives of the Company, Implats, JOGMEC and Mnombo. Seventeen drill rigs were on site and drilling commenced with the objectives of defining the shallowest areas of the current 102 million tonne reserve (details below) for increased confidence and detailed mine planning and to upgrade a portion of the indicated resources to measured resources for reserve consideration in the DFS. Immediate areas for in-fill drilling include the Northern and Boundary Super F zones.

---

**March 2018** *Memorandum of Understanding JOGMEC/Hanwa*

On March 8, 2018 the Company announced that JOGMEC and Hanwa Co., Ltd. ( **Hanwa** ) signed a memorandum of understanding to transfer part of JOGMEC's interest in the Waterberg Project to Hanwa. The agreement is the result of a public tender on February 23, 2018 won by Hanwa. JOGMEC started negotiation on the terms of the transfer with Hanwa. With a successful implementation of the transfer agreement, Hanwa will secure the right to a supply of refined platinum group metals for exhaust emission catalytic converters, fuel cells for cars, and nickel and other metals for rechargeable batteries. Hanwa is a leading global trading company headquartered in Tokyo Japan with over 3,000 employees and operations spanning steel, non-ferrous metals, metals and alloys, food, petroleum, chemicals, machinery, lumber and other business sectors.

**April 2018** *Completion of the Maseve Sale Transaction Stage One*

On April 5, 2018 the Company completed the Plant Sale Transaction of the Maseve Sale Transaction when RBPlat paid Maseve \$58 million in cash to acquire the concentrator plant and certain surface assets of the Maseve Mine.

*Completion of the Maseve Sale Transaction Stage Two*

The Share Transaction was completed on April 26, 2018 with the release of 4.87 million RBPlat ordinary shares from escrow, worth approximately \$9.0 million at that time. The required cash payment was made on May 29, 2018, funded by the release of Maseve's Rand 58 million environmental bond, valued at \$4.6 million on May 29, 2018.

*Payment of Sprott Facility Indebtedness*

The Company used US\$47.1 million from the proceeds of the Maseve Sale Transaction to repay all remaining indebtedness under the Sprott Facility, consisting of the outstanding principal amount of US\$40.0 million, a bridge loan of US\$5.0 million and all accrued and unpaid interest and fees due of approximately US\$2.1 million.

*Partial Payment of LMM Facility Indebtedness*

The Company also made payments to Liberty totaling US\$23.1 million. These payments first paid down the production payment termination accrual of \$15 million. The remaining US\$8.1 million was then applied against the loan and accrued interest owing.

---

**NYSE American Notice**

On April 10, 2018 and May 23, 2018 the Company received letters from the NYSE American stating that it is not in compliance with the continued listing standards as set forth in Sections 1003(a)(i), 1003(a)(ii), 1003(a)(iii) and 1003(f)(v) of the NYSE American Company Guide (the **Company Guide** ). Upon submission of a plan of compliance by the Company, on June 21, 2018 the NYSE American granted the Company an extension until November 23, 2018 to regain compliance with the requirements of Section 1003(f)(v) of the Company Guide and until October 10, 2019 to regain compliance with Sections 1003(a)(i), 1003(a)(ii) and 1003(a)(iii) of the Company Guide. The Company is not currently in compliance with NYSE American listing standards, but its listing is being continued pursuant to an exception. The Company will be subject to periodic review by Exchange staff during the extension period. If the Company is not in compliance with the Company Guide by the applicable deadlines or if the Company does not make progress consistent with the plan during the plan period, Exchange staff will initiate delisting proceedings as appropriate.

Section 1003(a) of the Company Guide sets forth minimum shareholders' equity requirements for a company listed on the NYSE American. It also provides that the NYSE American will not normally consider suspending dealings in, or removing from the list, the securities of an issuer if the issuer is in compliance with the following: (A) total value of market capitalization of at least US\$50.0 million; or total assets and revenue of US\$50.0 million each in its last fiscal year, or in two of its last three fiscal years; and (B) the issuer has at least 1,100,000 shares publicly held, a market value of publicly held shares of at least US\$15.0 million and 400 round lot shareholders (collectively, the **Alternative Listing Standards** ). In order to satisfy the Alternative Listing Standards, the Company must regain a market capitalization of US\$50.0 million or more for a period that the NYSE American considers adequate. These standards in no way limit or restrict the NYSE American's discretionary authority to suspend dealings in, or remove, a security from listing.

Section 1003(f)(v) of the Company Guide provides that the NYSE American will normally consider suspending dealings in, or removing from the list, an issuer's shares if the issuer's shares sell for a low price per share for a substantial period of time and the issuer fails to effect a share consolidation of such shares within a reasonable time after being notified that the NYSE American deems such action to be appropriate under the circumstances.

**May 2018** *Amendments to LMM Facility*

On May 1, 2018 the Company reported amendments to the LMM Facility pursuant to which the Company must raise a minimum of US\$20 million in subordinated debt and/or equity (the **First Required Financing** ) before May 15, 2018 (previously before May 10, 2018); and provided that the Company applies the first US\$20 million of net proceeds from the First Required Financing to reduce indebtedness under the LMM Facility before May 15, 2018, and is not otherwise in default under the LMM Facility; a previous second required financing to raise a further US\$20 million in subordinated debt and/or equity before July 31, 2018 will be eliminated; the LMM Facility maturity date will be extended to June 30, 2019 (previously September 30, 2018); and interest will continue to accrue until the maturity date (previously interest became payable quarterly after June 30, 2018).

---

On May 15, 2018 the Company further reported amendments to the LMM Facility to comply with the First Required Financing before May 31, 2018 (previously May 15, 2018); and provided that the Company applies the first US\$12 million of net proceeds from the First Required Financing to reduce indebtedness under the LMM Facility before May 31, 2018, and is not otherwise in default, the LMM Facility maturity date will be extended to October 31, 2019 (previously June 30, 2018).

***US\$ 2.26 Million Private Placement and Director s Appointment***

On May 15, 2018 the Company announced the closing of a strategic investment in the Company by HCI on a private placement basis. HCI subscribed, through a subsidiary, for 15,090,999 units (the **HCI Units** ) at a price of US\$0.15 per unit for gross proceeds of US\$2,263,649.85 (the **May 2018 Private Placement** ). Each HCI Unit consists of one common share and one common share purchase warrant (a **Private Placement Warrant** ), with each common share purchase warrant allowing HCI to purchase one further common share of the Company at a price of US\$0.17 per share for a period of 18 months until November 15, 2019. The Company intends to use the net proceeds of the May 2018 Private Placement: (i) for debt repayment towards a loan facility and production payment termination fees due to LMM; and (ii) for general corporate and working capital purposes.

Pursuant to the subscription agreement, upon completion of the May 2018 Private Placement, HCI became entitled to nominate one person to be appointed to the board of directors of the Company and obtained a right to participate in future equity financings of the Company to maintain its pro-rata interest. Accordingly, Mr. John Anthony Copelyn, Chief Executive Officer of HCI was appointed as a director of the Company.

***US\$ 17.62 Million Public Offering***

On May 15, 2018 the Company announced the closing of a previously announced marketed public offering (the "**May 2018 Offering**") of units (the **Offering Units** ). The Company issued 117,453,862 Offering Units at a price of US\$0.15 per Offering Unit for gross proceeds of approximately US\$17.62 million, including the issuance of 3,453,862 Offering Units pursuant to the partial exercise of an over-allotment option granted to the underwriters of the May 2018 Offering. Each Unit consisted of one common share (an **Offering Common Share** ) and one common share purchase warrant (an **Offering Warrant** ), with each Offering Warrant entitling the holder thereof to purchase one Offering Common Share at a price of US\$0.17 for a term of 18 months from the date of closing of the May 2018 Offering. Upon closing of the May 2018 Offering, the Offering Warrants began trading on the TSX under the symbol **PTM.WT.U** . The net proceeds of the May 2018 Public Offering, after expenses, was approximately US\$15.0 million. The Company intends to use the net proceeds of the May 2018 Offering: (i) towards repayment of a loan facility and production payment termination fees due to LMM; and (ii) for general corporate and working capital purposes.

---

***Definitive Feasibility Study Update II***

On May 29, 2018 the Company announced that work on the DFS was proceeding according to plan. The latest phase of 38,000 meters of infill drilling was been completed safely and on budget, bringing the total drill testing completed on the project to approximately 346,000 meters.

**June 2018**      ***Water Supply Management***

On June 19, 2018 the Company reported an agreement with the Capricorn District Municipality to jointly develop a water supply management plan to increase the water supply and infrastructure capacity for both local community and Waterberg Mine usage. This public-private partnership will benefit both the mine and the communities around the mining area.

**Period ended August 31, 2018**      ***During the twelve month period ended August 31, 2018***, the Company incurred and capitalized \$8.7 million (August 31, 2017 - \$5.7 million) exploration and development costs for the Waterberg Project, of which \$5.9 million was covered by joint venture partners Impala and JOGMEC. At the prior fiscal year end of August 31, 2017 the Company recognized an impairment charge for the Maseve Mine in the amount of \$589 million, reducing the carrying value of the Maseve Mine to \$74 million (before transaction fees), approximating its net value pursuant to the Maseve Sale Transaction.

**October 2018**      ***Mining Right Application***

On October 10, 2018 the Company announced the acceptance of a mining right application for the Waterberg Project by the DMR. The application consists of a mining work program, social and labour plan and applicable environmental applications. The mining right application is supported by the Company and all of the Waterberg joint venture partners including Implats, JOGMEC and Mnombo. The process of consultation under the MPRDA and environmental assessment regulations for the mining right application has commenced.

***Updated Mineral Resource Estimate***

On October 25, 2018, the Company reported an updated independent 4E resource estimate for the Waterberg Project. These results, based on a drilling program completed in 2018, confirmed increased confidence in the Waterberg Project with 6.26 million 4E ounces recognized in the higher confidence measured category. Mineral resources estimated in the combined measured and indicated categories have increased by 1.46 million 4E ounces to 26.34 million 4E ounces. Inferred mineral Resources are estimated at 7.0 million 4E ounces. The aggregate T Zone and F Zone measured and indicated resource is comprised of 63% palladium, 29% platinum, 6% gold and 1% rhodium (242.5 Million Tonnes at 3.38 g/t 4E). The T Zone measured and indicated mineral resources have increased in grade from 3.88g/t 4E as estimated for the 2016 PFS to 4.51 g/t 4E in 2018. All of the preceding was estimated at a 2.5 g/t 4E (palladium, platinum, rhodium and gold) cut-off grade. For more details about the updated independent 4E resource estimate for the Waterberg Project, see Item 4.D. Property, Plant and Equipment Technical Report Waterberg.

On November 16, 2018 Platinum Group filed a National Instrument 43-101 technical report on the above updated mineral resources entitled "Technical Report On The Mineral Resource Update For The Waterberg Project Located In The Bushveld Igneous Complex, South Africa" (the **October 2018 Waterberg Report**). In addition, a SAMREC 2016 compliant Mineral Resource statement has been prepared and signed-off by the Independent Geological Qualified Person. The Independent Geological Qualified Person for the October 2018 Waterberg Report and the companion SAMREC Mineral Resource statement is Mr. Charles J Muller, (B.Sc. (Hons) Geology) Pr. Sci. Nat. (Reg. No. 400201/04), CJM Consulting (Pty) Ltd.

Mineral resources in the October 2018 Waterberg Report are classified in accordance with the SAMREC 2016 standards. There are certain differences with the "CIM Standards on Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves"; however, in this case the Independent Qualified Person believes the differences are not material and the standards may be considered the same. Mineral resources that are not mineral reserves do not have demonstrated economic viability but there are reasonable prospects for eventual economic extraction. Inferred mineral resources have a high degree of uncertainty.

Readers are directed to review the full text of the October 2018 Waterberg Report, which is incorporated by reference herein and is available for review under the Company's profile on SEDAR at [www.sedar.com](http://www.sedar.com) and on EDGAR at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov)

### **November 2018 Share Consolidation**

On November 20, 2018, the Company announced its intention to complete the 2018 Share Consolidation by consolidating the Company's Common Shares on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10), effective at 9:00 a.m. (New York time) on December 13, 2018. See "Introduction Share Consolidation".

## **B. Business Overview**

### **General**

The Company is a platinum and palladium focused exploration, development and operating company conducting work primarily on mineral properties it has staked or acquired by way of option agreements or applications in the Republic of South Africa and in Canada.

The Company's sole material mineral property is the Waterberg Project. The Company continues to evaluate exploration opportunities both on currently owned properties and on new prospects.

### **Principal Product**

The Company's principal product from the Waterberg Project, in accordance with the 2016 PFS, is planned to be a PGM bearing concentrate. The concentrate will contain certain amounts of eight elements comprised of platinum, palladium, rhodium, gold, ruthenium, iridium, copper and nickel. Pursuant to the Implats Transaction, Implats has acquired a right of first refusal to enter into an offtake agreement, on commercial arms-length terms, for the smelting and refining of mineral products from the Waterberg Project.

---

**Specialized Skill and Knowledge**

Various aspects of The Company's business require specialized skills and knowledge, including the areas of geology, engineering, operations, drilling, metallurgy, permitting, logistical planning and implementation of exploration programs as well as legal compliance, finance and accounting. The Company faces competition for qualified personnel with these specialized skills and knowledge, which may increase its costs of operations or result in delays.

Pursuant to the Implats Transaction, Implats is an active participant in the completion of a DFS for the Waterberg Project. Should Implats exercise the Purchase and Development Option, Implats will become the majority owner and will have the right to appoint the manager of the Waterberg Project. Implats is one of the world's foremost fully integrated producers of platinum and associated PGEs. The group produces approximately a quarter of the world's supply of primary platinum. Implats' operations are located on the Bushveld Complex in South Africa and the Great Dyke in Zimbabwe, two of the most significant PGE-bearing ore bodies in the world. In Southern Africa Implats is structured around five main operations namely Impala, Zimplats, Marula, Mimosa and Two Rivers with headquarters based in Johannesburg, South Africa.

**Employees and Contractors**

The Company's current complement of managers, staff and consultants in Canada consists of approximately 6 individuals. The Company's complement of managers, staff, consultants, security and casual workers in South Africa consists of approximately 11 individuals, inclusive of 3 individuals active at the Waterberg Project conducting exploration and engineering activities related to the planned completion of a DFS expected in the first part of 2019. The Waterberg Project is operated by the Company utilizing its own staff and personnel. Contract drilling, geotechnical, engineering and support services are utilized as required. Operations at the Waterberg Project are funded by Waterberg JV Co. and its shareholders.

**Foreign Operations**

The Company conducts its business in South Africa. South Africa has a large and well-developed mining industry. This, among other factors, means the infrastructure in many areas is well-established, with well-maintained roads and highways as well as electricity distribution networks, water supply and telephone and communication systems. Electrical generating capacity has been strained by demand in recent years in South Africa, but additional capacity is currently under construction. Additional water infrastructure will also be required. See **Risk Factors** .

There is also access to materials and skilled labour in South Africa due to the existence of many platinum, chrome, gold and coal mines. Smelter complexes and refining facilities are also located in South Africa. South Africa has an established government, police force and judiciary as well as financial, health care and social institutions, although such institutions underwent significant change following the fall of apartheid and free elections in 1994, and are continuing to be developed. The system of mineral tenure was overhauled by new legislation in 2002, which came into force in 2004. Since 1994, South Africa has been considered an emerging democracy. See **Risk Factors** .

---



## Social or Environmental Policies

### *Corporate Social Responsibility*

Being a responsible corporate citizen means protecting the natural environment associated with its business activities, providing a safe workplace for its employees and contractors, and investing in infrastructure, economic development, and health and education in the communities where the Company operates so that it can enhance the lives of those who work and live there beyond the life of such operations. The Company takes a long term view of its corporate responsibility, which is reflected in the policies that guide its business decisions, and in its corporate culture that fosters safe and ethical behaviour across all levels of Platinum Group. The Company's goal is to ensure that its engagement with its stakeholders, including its workforce, industry partners, and the communities where it operates, is continued, mutually beneficial and transparent. By building such relationships and conducting ourselves in this manner, the Company can address specific concerns of its stakeholders and work cooperatively and effectively towards achieving this goal.

### *Social and Labour Plans*

The Waterberg Social and Labour Plan (the **Waterberg Social and Labour Plan**) is currently being developed pursuant to South African Department of Mineral Resources (**DMR**) guidelines for social and labour plans and a draft has been submitted in accordance with regulation 46 of the MPRDA together with the application for a mining right for the Waterberg Project. The objective of a social and labour plan is to align the Company's social and labour principles with the related requirements established under Mining Charter 2018. These requirements include promoting employment and avoiding retrenchments, advancement of the social and economic welfare of all South Africans, contributing toward the transformation of the mining industry and contributing towards the socio-economic development of the communities proximal to the Waterberg Project. Contractors will be required to comply with the Waterberg Social and Labour Plan and policies, including commitment to employment equity and BEE, proof of competence in terms of regulations, commitment to undertake training programs, compliance with all policies relating to recruitment, training, health and safety, etc. In terms of human resources training, the Waterberg Social and Labour Plan will establish objectives for adult-based education training, learnerships and development of skills required by mining industry, portable skills training for transition into industries other than mining, education bursaries and internships. The Waterberg Social and Labour Plan will also plan to establish local economic development objectives for projects such as community centre refurbishment, high school refurbishment, water and reticulation projects, housing development, establishment of recreational parks and various other localized programmes for small scale industry, agriculture, entrepreneurship and health and education.

### *Labour in South Africa*

The gold and platinum mining industries in South Africa witnessed significant labour unrest in recent years and demands for higher wages by certain labour groups. Both legal and illegal or unprotected strikes have occurred at several mines since the beginning of August 2012. In June 2014, the Association of Mineworkers and Construction Union accepted a negotiated wage settlement to end a five-month long strike affecting a significant proportion of the platinum industry. To date, the Company has seen no adverse labour action on its operations in South Africa and the retrenchment processes at the Maseve Mine were peaceful and orderly. See Risk Factors .

---

### ***Environmental Compliance***

The Company's current and future exploration and development activities, as well as future mining and processing operations, if warranted, are subject to various state, provincial and local laws and regulations in the countries in which the Company conducts its activities. These laws and regulations govern the protection of the environment, prospecting, development, production, taxes, labour standards, occupational health, mine safety, hazardous substances and other matters. Company management expects to be able to comply with those laws and does not believe that compliance will have a material adverse effect on the Company's competitive position. The Company intends to obtain and maintain all licences and permits required by all applicable regulatory agencies in connection with its mining operations and exploration activities. The Company intends to maintain standards of compliance consistent with contemporary industry practice.

### ***Competitive Conditions***

The global PGM mining industry has historically been characterised by long-term rising demand from global automotive and fabrication sectors on the one hand and constrained supply sources on the other. South Africa's PGM mining sector has been the largest and fastest growing sector in the South African mining industry until recently, representing approximately 80% of global supply. Since mid-2012 global economic uncertainty, recycling and slow growth have created a weak market for PGMs. Lower market prices for PGMs combined with labour unrest has caused stoppages and closures of some higher cost platinum mines and shafts in South Africa. Almost all of the South African platinum and palladium supply comes from the geographic constraints of the Western, Northern and Eastern Limbs of the Bushveld Complex, resulting in a high degree of competition for mineral rights and projects. South Africa's PGM mining sector remains beholden to economic developments in the global automotive industry, which currently accounts for approximately 41% of the total global demand for platinum. A prolonged downturn in global automobile and light truck sales, resulting in depressed platinum prices, often results in declining production as unprofitable mines are shut down. Alternatively, strong automobile and light truck sales combined with strong fabrication demand for platinum, most often results in a more robust industry, creating competition for resources, including funding, labour, technical experts, power, water, materials and equipment. There is not a material seasonal effect or influence on the PGM market or business. Since late 2015 the price of palladium has approximately doubled due to rising automotive sector demand. The South African industry is dominated by three or four producers, who also control smelting and refining facilities. As a result, there is general competition for access to these facilities on a contract basis. If the Company moves towards production on the Waterberg Project, it will become exposed to many of the risks of competition described herein. See Risk Factors .

### ***Mineral Property Interests***

Under IFRS, the Company defers all acquisition, exploration and development costs related to mineral properties. The recoverability of these amounts is dependent upon the existence of economically recoverable mineral reserves, the ability of the Company to obtain the necessary financing to complete the development of the property, and any future profitable production; or alternatively upon the Company's ability to dispose of its interests on an advantageous basis.

The Company's key development project and exploration targets are located in the Bushveld Complex in South Africa. The Bushveld Complex is comprised of a series of distinct layers or reefs, three of which contain the majority of the economic concentrations of platinum group metals (together, **PGMs** , and the subset of 4E PGMs consisting of platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold, or the subset of 3E PGMs consisting of platinum, palladium and gold) within the Bushveld Complex: (i) the Merensky Reef ( **Merensky** or **MR** ), which occurs around the Western Limb of the Bushveld Complex, (ii) the Upper Group 2 Layer or Reef ( **UG2** ), which occurs around the Eastern Limb of the Bushveld Complex and (iii) the Platreef ( **Platreef** ), found within the Northern Limb. These reefs exhibit extensive geological continuity and predictability and have an established history of economic PGM production. The Merensky,

UG2 and Platreef have been producing PGMs since the 1920s, 1970s and 1990s, respectively.

---

For a further discussion of the Company's material and non-material mineral properties, see Item 4.D. Property, Plant and Equipment.

**South African Regulatory Framework**

The Company is subject to South African government regulations that affect all aspects of the Company's operations. Accordingly, the sections below set out the primary laws and regulatory concepts to which the Company is subject.

---

***Black Economic Empowerment in the South African Mining Industry***

The transition from an apartheid regime to a democratic regime brought with it a commitment by the South African state, as enshrined in the Constitution, to take legislative and other measures to redress the results of past racial discrimination against black South Africans, or as the MPRDA and Mining Charter defines them, HDPs. Under the MPRDA, the concept includes any association, the majority of whose members are HDPs as well as juristic persons if HDPs own and control the majority of the shares and control the majority of the shareholders' votes.

This concept and process to take legislative and other measures to redress the results of past racial discrimination against black South Africans is known in South Africa as broad-based black economic empowerment, or BEE. The mining industry was one of many industries identified by the South African government as requiring reform to bring about equitable benefit from South Africa's mineral industry to all South Africans and to promote local and rural development and social upliftment of communities affected by mining.

The regulatory regime governing the South African mining industry has therefore fundamentally changed over the past decade. Legislation governing mining and BEE within the mining sector includes, among other laws, the MPRDA, the Mining Codes and the Standards pursuant to the MPRDA, Mining Charter 2018, Mining Charter 2018 Scorecard and the Mining Titles Registration Act No. 16 of 1967 (as amended). The aforementioned legislation, however, is industry specific and the generic BEE regulatory framework in South Africa is regulated in terms of the BEE Act, which sets out the South African government's policy in respect of the promotion of BEE. The BEE Act also permits the Minister of Trade and Industry to publish generic BEE Codes of Good Practice ( **Generic BEE Codes** ), being codes of good practice that address, among other things, the indicators to measure BEE and the weightings to be attached to such indicators.

The Generic BEE Codes were originally published in 2007 and set out seven indicators or elements in terms of which BEE compliance is measured. Each element has a scorecard in terms of which various sub-elements are set out, together with a target for compliance with each sub-element and a corresponding number of weighting points. An entity's BEE compliance is measured in terms of each of these scorecards and the aggregate score will then determine that entity's BEE compliance level. Independent BEE verification agencies are authorized to verify an entity's compliance and provide it with a verification certificate which will set out its score and confirm its BEE compliance level. The seven elements of BEE compliance set out in the original Generic BEE Codes are ownership (which measures the extent to which black people own the measured entity), management control (which measures the extent to which black people form part of the board of directors and top management of the entity), employment equity (which measures the extent to which black people are employed with the various management levels of the entity), skills development (which measures the extent to which the entity has undertaken skills training for the benefit of its black employees), preferential procurement (which measures the extent to which the entity procures goods and services from BEE compliant and black-owned companies), enterprise development (which measures the extent to which the entity has contributed towards the development of black-owned or BEE compliant companies), and socio-economic development (which measures the extent to which the entity has contributed towards the economic development of black people).

The original Generic BEE Codes were amended on October 11, 2013 and such amendments became effective from May 1, 2015. Generally speaking, the amended Generic BEE Codes seek to make BEE compliance more onerous to achieve. The total number of points required to achieve certain levels of BEE compliance have been increased. The elements of management control and employment equity have been consolidated into a single element referred to only as management control, and the elements of preferential procurement and enterprise development have been consolidated into a single element referred to as enterprise and supplier development. The elements of ownership, skills development and enterprise and supplier development are classified as priority elements to which minimum thresholds of compliance attach and subjects an entity to a penalty of a reduction in its BEE compliance status by one

level if the entity fails to achieve any of such minimum thresholds.

---

In addition, the BEE Act was amended by The BEE Amendment Act, which came into operation on October 24, 2014.

The provisions of section 3(2) set out in the BEE Amendment Act states that *in the event of any conflict between this Act and any other law in force immediately prior to the date of commencement of the Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Act, 2013, this Act prevails if the conflict specifically relates to a matter dealt with in this Act* (the **Trumping Provision**). The BEE Amendment Act provides that section 3(2) will come into effect one year after the date on which the President proclaims the BEE Amendment Act into law and therefore became operative on October 24, 2015. However, on October 30, 2015 the Minister of Trade and Industry exempted the DMR from applying the Trumping Provision until October 31, 2016 on the basis that the alignment of the Mining Charter 2018 with the BEE Act and the BEE Codes was still ongoing. There has not been a further extension of this exemption.

Section 10(1)(a) set out in the BEE Amendment Act provides that *every organ of state and public entity must apply any relevant code of good practice issued in terms of this Act in determining qualification criteria for the issuing of licences, concessions or other authorizations in respect of economic activity in terms of any law*. This will require all governmental bodies to apply the Generic BEE Codes or other relevant codes of good practice when procuring goods or services or issuing licenses or other authorizations under any other laws, and to penalize fronting or misrepresentation of BEE information.

The provisions of section 3(2) and 10(1)(a) indicate that the DMR would be obliged to apply the provisions of the BEE Act and of any BEE code of good practice gazetted in terms of the BEE Act when issuing rights, permissions or permits in terms of the MPRDA in the future.

A code of good practice refers to the Generic BEE Codes or any sector-specific code of good practice which has been developed and gazetted in terms of the provisions of the BEE Act after consultation with the relevant industry stakeholders and the Department of Trade and Industry. It does not include Mining Charter 2018. The implications of the above provisions of the BEE Amendment Act are that unless a mining sector code is developed and gazetted, or unless a further exemption is granted by Ministers of Trade and Industry, the DMR would not be entitled to apply Mining Charter 2018 when issuing rights, permissions or permits (after commencement of the abovementioned sections of the BEE Amendment Act) and would be required to apply the Generic BEE Codes. While the target for ownership under the Generic BEE Codes is the same as in Mining Charter 2010 i.e. 26% (as opposed to the current Mining Charter 2018's 30%), the remaining elements in terms of which BEE compliance is measured are materially different from those set out in Mining Charter 2018. In addition, the extent of BEE compliance is determined under the Generic BEE Codes with reference to an entity's overall score and corresponding BEE compliance level, and Mining Charter 2018's scorecard does not contain the same methodology. Thus, if the Generic BEE Codes were to apply to the mining industry, it would place the industry at a disadvantage and create uncertainty.

---

Section 10(2)(a) set out in the BEE Amendment Act provides that *the Minister may, after consultation with the relevant organ of state or public entity, exempt the organ of state or public entity from a requirement contained in subsection (1) or allow a deviation therefrom if particular objectively verifiable facts or circumstances applicable to the organ of state or public entity necessitate a deviation* . Such an exemption or deviation is required to be published in the government gazette. It seems possible, but it is not certain whether the DMR could apply for such an exemption in respect of the mining industry.

The DMR and industry bodies are aware of the implications of the Trumping Provision. Notwithstanding that there has been no further extension of the exemption in respect of the Trumping Provision, to date, the DMR continues to apply the provisions of Mining Charter 2018 and not the Generic BEE Codes.

It is important to bear in mind that none of Mining Charter 2018, Mining Charter 2018 Scorecard or the Mining Codes are drafted as legislative documents. They are instruments of policy and as such are frequently ambiguous, loosely worded and difficult to interpret with precision.

The MPRDA seeks to facilitate participation by HDPs in mining ventures. Complying with the HDP regime is a prerequisite for being granted and maintaining prospecting and mining rights. Every application for a mining right under the MPRDA must demonstrate that the granting of such right will:

substantially and meaningfully expand opportunities for HDPs, including women, to enter the mineral and petroleum industry in order to benefit from the exploitation of the nation's mineral and petroleum resources; and

promote employment and advance the social and economic welfare of all South Africans.

### ***The Mining Charter***

The original mining charter was developed to give substance and guidance to the empowerment provisions under MPRDA, which came into effect on May 1, 2004. The original mining charter set out a number of targets which were to be achieved by mining companies by 2009 and 2014. Among other targets, mining companies had to achieve a 15% HDP ownership by 2009 and a 26% HDP ownership by 2014. Ownership relates to ownership of mining assets, whether through the holding of equity, partnership, joint venture or direct holding.

Notwithstanding the uncertainties in BEE legislation applicable to mining companies with regard to the measurement of HDP ownership, it is accepted practice (as confirmed in section 2.1.2 of the Mining Codes) that the so-called flow-through and modified flow-through principles are applicable to the calculation of indirectly held HDP interests (i.e. where there is partial HDP ownership in a corporate structure above the level of the company holding the prospecting or mining right). In terms of the flow-through principle, the level of indirect ownership, proportionally reduced to reflect partial HDP shareholding in intermediate companies, would be calculated to determine the proportional indirect HDP shareholding in the company holding the right. Under the modified flow-through principle, a company with more than 51% HDP ownership (defined as a Historically Disadvantaged Persons Owned and Controlled Company in Mining Charter 2018) may, at any one level in a corporate structure, attribute 100% HDP ownership to that company for the purposes of applying the flow-through principle.

On September 13, 2010, the Mining Charter, 2010 came into effect setting targets (some of which remained the same as those in the original mining charter) to be achieved by mining companies by December 31, 2014 (the implementation of which needed to be reported to the DMR by mining companies in 2015), which targets included:

---



Ownership: this entails 26% meaningful economic participation by HDPs and 26% full shareholder rights for HDPs. Mining Charter 2010 refers to BEE entities as opposed to HDP companies but retains the 26% ownership target.

Housing and living conditions: occupancy rate of employee accommodations of one person per room and all conversion of employee hostels must be fully achieved.

Procurement and enterprise development:

a minimum procurement of 40% of capital goods, 70% of services and 50% of consumer goods from BEE entities; and

ensure that multinational suppliers of capital goods contribute at least 0.5% of their annual income generated from local mining companies towards a fund for the purposes of socio- economic development of local communities.

Employment equity: 40% HDP participation at Board level, at executive committee level, in middle management, in junior management and 40% HDP participation within core skills.

Human resource development: 5% human resource development expenditure focused on HDPs as a percentage of total annual payroll.

Mine community development: implementation of approved community projects.

Sustainable development and growth:

implementation of approved EMP measured annually against the approved plans;

implementation of action plans on health and safety measured annually against the approved plans; and

utilization of South African based research facilities for the analysis of all South African sourced mineral samples.

Beneficiation: contribute a percentage of additional production volume towards local beneficiation of mineral commodities in accordance with the beneficiation strategy introduced pursuant to the terms of section 26 of the MPRDA. No such strategy has yet been finalized.

Reporting: submission of annual reports to the DMR in respect of compliance with Mining Charter 2018 2010. Mining Charter 2010 included targets, measures and weightings by which mining right holders were assessed against the obligations according to Mining Charter 2010 Scorecard. Failure of a company to meet its obligations in relation to Mining Charter 2010 could lead to the suspension or cancellation of its New Order Rights and could have a negative impact on applications for New Order Rights.

The application for the Waterberg Project Mining Right will be adjudicated upon and granted in accordance with the ownership requirements of Mining Charter 2010, given that it was lodged and accepted prior to the coming into force of the current Mining Charter 2018.

On September 27, 2018, the Minister of Mineral Resources announced the implementation of Mining Charter 2018 which sets out new and revised targets to be achieved by mining companies, the most pertinent of these being the

revised BEE ownership shareholding requirements for mining rights holders.

---

Mining Charter 2018 provides for the publication of 'Implementation Guidelines' by November 27, 2018. This creates greater uncertainty in measuring a mining right holder's progress towards, and compliance with, its commitments under Mining Charter 2018.

Under Mining Charter 2018, new mining rights holders will be required to have a minimum 30% BEE shareholding (a 4% increase from the required 26% under the Mining Charter 2010) which shall include economic interest plus a corresponding percentage of voting rights, per right or in the mining company which holds the right. Once the Waterberg Project Mining Right is granted, Waterberg JV Co. will have a period of 5 years within which to increase its BEE shareholding to 30%. Mining Charter 2018 remains unclear as to whether such shareholding will be required to be distributed amongst employees, communities and black entrepreneurs as detailed below, and if so, in what percentages.

A new mining right granted after the coming into effect of Mining Charter 2018 must have a minimum of 30% BEE shareholding, applicable for the duration of the mining right, which must be distributed as to (i) a minimum of 5% non-transferable *carried* interest to qualifying employees; (ii) a minimum of 5% non-transferrable *carried* interest to host communities, or a minimum 5% equity equivalent benefit; and (iii) a minimum of 20% effective ownership in the form of shares to a BEE entrepreneur, a minimum of 5% which must *preferably* be for women.

The equity equivalent benefit relating to communities refers to a 5% equivalent of the issued share capital, at no cost to a trust or similar vehicle set up for the benefit of host communities. The intention behind introducing this alternative is so that communities accessing the benefit of ownership will not be delayed. The host community would receive an economic benefit *as if* it was the holder of a 5% equity interest.

The carried interest of 5% to each of the community and the employees must be issued to them at no cost and free of encumbrance. The costs to the right holder of such issue can be recovered from the development of the mineral asset.

Mining right holders may claim an equity equivalent offset against a maximum 5% of a BEE Entrepreneur shareholding for beneficiation in accordance with a DMR approved Beneficiation Equity Equivalent Plan.

The Mining Charter 2018 also sets deadlines by which the BEE Shareholding must vest for new rights, namely a minimum of 50% must vest within two thirds of the duration of a mining right; and the prescribed minimum 30% target shall apply for the duration of a mining right.

Existing mining right holder who achieved a minimum of 26% BEE shareholding, or who achieved a 26% BEE shareholding but whose BEE shareholders exited prior to September 27, 2018 will be recognized as BEE ownership compliant for the duration of the mining right, but not for any period of renewal thereof.

A mining right holder will be required to invest in Human Resource Development by paying 5% of the "leviable amount", being the levy payable under the South African Skills Development Act, No. 97 of 1998, (excluding the mandatory statutory skills levy) towards essential skills development activities such as science, technology, engineering, mathematics skills as well as artisans, internships, apprentices, bursaries, literacy and numeracy skills for employees and non-employees (community members), graduate training programmes, research and development of solutions in exploration, mining, processing, technology efficiency (energy and water use in mining), beneficiation as well as environmental conservation and rehabilitation.

Mining right holders must promote economic development through developing and/or nurturing small, medium and micro enterprises and suppliers of mining goods and services. Within 6 months of implementation of the Mining Charter 2018, right holders must submit a 5-year plan indicating incremental implementation of inclusive procurement targets.



Holders must spend a minimum of 70% of their total mining goods procurement expenditure (excluding non-discretionary expenditure) on South African Manufactured Goods (with a local content of at least 60%) on procurement from stipulated BEE entities.

Mining right holders may invest in enterprise and supplier development against which they may offset their procurement obligations in accordance with the prescripts laid down In the Mining Charter 2018.

A minimum of 70% of a holder's total research and development budget must be spent on South African based research and development entities, either in the public or private sector and only South African based companies or facilities can be utilized for the analysis of all mineral samples across the mining value chain.

Mining Charter 2018 also provides for minimum employment equity thresholds at various levels of management. These include -

- o Board - a minimum of 50% are HDP's, 20% of which must be women;
- o Executive Management - a minimum of 50% are HDP's at the executive director level as a percentage of all executive directors proportionally represented, 20% of which must be women;
- o Senior Management - a minimum of 60% are HDP's proportionally represented, 25% of which must be women;
- o Middle Management - a minimum of 60% are HDP's, proportionally represented, 25% of which must be women;
- o Junior Management - a minimum of 70% are HDP's proportionally represented, 30% of which must be women;
- o Employees with disabilities - a minimum of 1.5% employees with disabilities as a percentage of all employees, reflective of national or provincial demographics.

Mining right holders must also develop and implement a career progression plan (aligned with its Social and Labour Plan) consistent with the demographics of South Africa, which plan must provide for (i) career development matrices of each discipline (inclusive of minimum entry requirements and timeframes); (ii) develop individual development plans for employees; (iii) identify a talent pool to be fast tracked in line with needs; and (iv) provide a comprehensive plan with targets, timeframes and how the plan would be implemented.

Mining right holders must meaningfully contribute towards Mine Community Development with biasness towards mine communities both in terms of impact as well as in keeping with the principles of the social license to operate. This element, together with the ownership element are ring-fenced and require 100% compliance at all times. In consultation with relevant municipalities, mine communities, traditional authorities and affected stakeholders, mining right holders must identify developmental priorities of mine communities and make provision for such priorities in prescribed and approved SLPs, to be published in English and one or two other languages commonly used within the mine community. Mining right holders who operate in the same area may collaborate on certain identified projects to maximize the socio-economic development impact in line with SLPs.

Holders must implement 100% of their SLP commitments in any given financial year of the mining right holder. Any amendments and/or variations to commitments set out in SLPs (including budgets) shall require approval in terms of section 102 of the MPRDA, and right holders will be required to consult with mine communities.



Housing and living conditions for mine workers as stipulated in the Housing and Living Conditions Standards, developed in terms of section 100(1)(a) of the MPRDA, including decent and affordable housing, provision for home ownership, provision for social, physical and economic integration of human settlements, secure tenure for the employees in housing institutions, proper health care services, affordable, equitable and sustainable health system and balanced nutrition. Under Mining Charter 2018, holders must submit housing and living conditions plans to be approved by the DMR after consultation with organized labor and the Department of Human Settlement. To provide clear targets and timelines for purposes of implementing the aforesaid housing and living condition principles, the Housing and Living Conditions Standard Guidelines shall be reviewed by the DMR within the near future.

Mining Charter 2018 provides, for the first time, a regime for junior miners who meet the qualifying criteria and grants such companies exemption from certain elements/targets. The regime for junior mining companies is limited to mining right holders who, either through holding a single or multiple mining rights, have a combined annual turnover of less than R150 million.

Mining right holders who have a turn-over of less than R10 million per annum are exempt from the following elements/targets set out in the Mining Charter 2018: Employment Equity Targets (if they have less than 10 employees); Inclusive Procurement Targets; as well as Enterprise and Supplier Development Targets, and are required to only comply with the following elements/targets Ownership element (but undefined as to composition of BEE shareholding); Employment Equity Targets (if they have more than 10 employees); Human Resource Development Targets; and Mine Community Development Targets. Mining right holders who have a turn-over of between R10 million and R 50 million per annum are required to comply with the following elements/target: Ownership element (but undefined as to composition of BEE shareholding); Human Resource Development Targets; Inclusive Procurement Targets; Employment Equity Targets (at group level); and Mine Community Development Targets.

#### ***New Order Mining and Prospecting Rights Under the MPRDA***

All of the Company's prospecting and mining rights are so-called new order rights (i.e. rights granted under the MPRDA) as opposed to old order rights, being rights granted under pre-MPRDA legislation. Under the MPRDA, mining companies operating in South Africa were required to apply for conversion of old order rights into new order prospecting and mining rights issued by the South African state in terms of the MPRDA. New order rights in respect of mining are granted for a maximum period of 30 years, with renewals of up to 30 years at a time. Prospecting rights are valid for a period of five years, with one renewal of up to three years. Furthermore, the MPRDA provides for a retention period after prospecting of up to three years with one renewal of up to two years, subject to certain conditions. The holder of a prospecting right granted under the MPRDA has the exclusive right to apply for and, subject to compliance with the requirements of the MPRDA, to be granted, a mining right in respect of the prospecting area in question.

The new order rights are transferable only with the approval of the Minister and are subject to various terms and conditions, including commencement of operations within specified periods, maintenance of continuing and active operations and compliance with work programs, social and labour plans, EMPs and empowerment requirements.

New order rights can be suspended or cancelled by the Minister if a holder has breached its obligations under the terms of the rights and has failed to remedy such breach after written notice of the breach from the Minister and after being given an opportunity to respond. In addition, mining rights could potentially be cancelled for non-compliance with the Mining Charter 2018.

---

### ***Resource Nationalism***

The concept of resource nationalism encompasses a range of measures, such as expropriation or taxation, whereby governments increase their economic interest in corporate entities exploiting natural resources, with or without compensation. The current South African government has publicly stated that it does not intend to nationalize the mining industry.

At its 53rd national conference in December 2012, the ANC debated its previously commissioned State Intervention in the Minerals Sector report (SIMS Report), and wholesale nationalization was rejected. It was resolved that state intervention in the economy would focus on beneficiation. Strategic minerals, which include platinum group metals, coal and iron ore, will be identified and special public policy measures may be put in place. Further state interventions could include state ownership through the state mining company, and mineral resource rents through the imposition of new taxes or a super-profits tax.

### ***Environment***

South Africa has a comprehensive and constantly evolving environmental regulatory framework, particularly relating to mining. The Constitution entrenches the right to an environment that is not harmful to human health or well-being and imposes a duty to protect the environment for the benefit of present and future generations through reasonable legislative and other measures. The Constitution and National Environmental Management Act ( **NEMA** ) grant legal standing to a wide range of people and interest groups to bring legal proceedings to enforce their environmental rights, such that claims can be made against private and public entities and the South African government.

Environmental impacts of mineral resource operations (including prospecting and mining of mineral resources and exploration and production of petroleum) are, at present, primarily regulated by four pieces of legislation, namely, the MPRDA, NEMA, National Environmental Management: Waste Act ( **NEMWA** ) and National Water Act ( **NWA** ).

South African environmental law is largely permit-based and requires businesses whose operations may have an environmental impact to obtain licenses and authorizations principally from the DMR and the DWS, which often contain stringent conditions.

Environmental legislation also stipulates general compliance requirements. It incorporates a polluter pays principle and also imposes a duty on a group of specified parties wider than the actual polluter to take reasonable measures to assess, prevent and address pollution (even that which was authorized by law). This duty is retrospective in its application. A failure to take such measures may result in governmental authorities taking measures against, and recovering costs from, a wider range of parties than the one on whom the duty primarily rests. This latter group includes a successor in title to a property and, based on international jurisprudence, is wide enough to include a lender or a shareholder of a company who caused the pollution, although the potential liability of shareholders and lenders has not yet been considered by South African courts.

NEMA provides for the appointment of Environmental Management Inspectors and Environmental Mineral Resource Inspectors at the Department of Environmental Affairs ( **DEA** ) and DMR respectively.

---



These inspectors have wide-ranging powers and can undertake both announced and unannounced inspections and investigations. Criminal prosecutions have been initiated and directives and compliance notices issued following a number of these inspections.

Under NEMA, it is a criminal offence for any person unlawfully and intentionally or negligently to commit any act or omission which causes, has caused or is likely to cause significant environmental pollution or degradation or unlawfully and intentionally or negligently commit any act or omission which detrimentally affects or is likely to affect the environment in a significant manner. A maximum criminal fine of up to Rand 10 million and/or a prison term of up to ten years may be imposed for such an offence. The NWA establishes a similar criminal offence in relation to water pollution.

Directives or compliance notices can also be issued under NEMA, the MPRDA or the NWA for the temporary or permanent shut down of facilities at a mining operation or the entire mining operation, due to environmental transgressions. NEMA also provides that directors and certain company officers can also be held liable in their personal capacity for the costs of rehabilitating environmental pollution or degradation.

The environmental regulation of mining has undergone a transition. NEMA is now the primary environmental legislation regulating mining and not the MPRDA. Due to this transition, the majority of the MPRDA's environmental regulation provisions were deleted ( **Pre-MPRDA Amendment Act Environmental Provisions** ) and the National Environmental Management Laws Amendment Act, No. 25 of 2014 ( **NEMLAA** ) introduced specific provisions regulating mining into NEMA. The Minister of Mineral Resources has however retained the bulk of his environmental regulation competencies under the NEMLAA's amendments, to be undertaken in accordance with NEMA. This transition has created some gaps which include that not all of the necessary amendments have yet commenced under the MPRDA and certain regulations under NEMA are outstanding.

Under the Pre-MPRDA Amendment Act Environmental Provisions, before 8 December 2014, environmental management plans and environmental management programmes ( **EMPs** ) were required to be approved by the relevant delegated authority at the DMR before a prospecting right or mining right respectively became effective.

In addition to requiring that an EMP be approved under the MPRDA, an environmental authorization ( **EA** ) was required for certain activities that are incidental to mining, listed in a series of Environmental Impact Assessment ("EIA") Regulations published under the NEMA. This includes vegetation clearance; construction of roads, facilities in proximity to a watercourse and facilities that may cause pollution; and storage of dangerous goods, where the activities exceeded specified thresholds ( **Listed Activities** ). An EA was not required for mining or prospecting activities.

This position changed on 8 December 2014 when the 2014 EIA Regulations commenced under NEMA, replacing the 2010 EIA Regulations. Mining and prospecting activities that commenced after this date required an EA, as do associated infrastructure and earthworks directly related to the prospecting and extraction of a mineral resource.

There are presently no provisions in force in the MPRDA or NEMA deeming EMPs approved under the MPRDA to be EAs issued under the NEMA, which creates gaps in relation to the obligations of mineral right holders with an approved EMP. Certain 2013 amendments to the MPRDA (following the implementation of the *Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act No. 49 of 2008* ( **MPRDA Amendment Act, 2008** )) introduced a deeming provision however it has not yet commenced. This provision provides that an EMP approved under the MPRDA before and at the time of the NEMA coming into force will be deemed to have been approved and an EA issued in terms of NEMA. The Amendment Bill proposes to amend the MPRDA Amendment Act, 2008's deeming provision to correct the incorrect reference of the NEMA to the NEMLAA. The Amendment Bill has however not yet been enacted into law. There are also no transitional provisions deeming approvals to EMP applications that were submitted before

NEMLAA and approved after NEMLAA to be deemed to be EAs. This has created the situation where strictly speaking applicants for mineral rights are now required to submit an application for an EA, despite an application for EMP approval being previously submitted. In practice however, the DMR views EMPs submitted under the MPRDA to be EAs.

---

NEMA requires an EA before Listed Activities commence and it is a criminal offence to commence such Listed Activity without the required EA. A person who has commenced a Listed Activity without an EA may apply for rectification of this state of affairs but would be required to pay a maximum administrative fine of R5 million, and may also face criminal penalties.

Under the NWA, water cannot be owned, but is instead held in trust for the people of South Africa under the State's custodianship. A water use license ( **WUL** ) is required to undertake certain water uses specified in the NWA. This includes water storage; abstraction; disposal of waste water into the environment; dewatering a mine; and impacting on watercourse's flow. Generally, large scale water users, such as mines, are required to either apply for WULs or, in certain cases, only to register water uses if small water volumes are abstracted or stored or the impacts to watercourses are low. In certain instances, an entity may continue with a water use that was conducted lawfully prior to 1998 under the predecessor to the NWA, the *Water Act, No. 54 of 1956*, without the requirement for a WUL. Conducting a water use without the required WUL is unlawful.

Regulations published under the NWA regulate water use in relation to mining activities, providing for limitations on the location of mining infrastructure and requirements for separation of dirty and clean water systems. If a water use or water management is unlawful, the DWS may issue administrative directives to enforce the NWA's provisions or stop the unlawful water use. Criminal proceedings can also be instituted. Penalties for offences are a maximum fine and/or imprisonment of Rand 200,000 and five years, respectively. Upon a second conviction, the maximum fine and/or imprisonment are Rand 400,000 and ten years, respectively. While significant progress has been made by the DWS in processing pending WUL applications, a backlog remains.

The *National Environmental Management Air Quality Act No. 39 of 2004* ( **AQA** ) regulates air pollution in South Africa and prohibits the undertaking of activities listed under AQA, including certain mining related and processing activities, without an atmospheric emission license. Minimum emission standards have been set for each listed activity. Facilities that were operational before these regulations came into force were afforded a grace period within which to comply with the more stringent air emission standards contained in the Regulations until 2015. If a facility did not comply with the 2015 air emission standards, upgrading of the facilities was necessary. Such facilities will need to comply with even more stringent air emission standards from 2020. Additional upgrades may therefore also be required before 2020 to comply with the 2020 air emission standards, for which significant capital expenditures ( **CAPEX** ) may be required. Alternatively, an application to postpone the time period for compliance with air emission standards may be possible but the grant of any postponement cannot be guaranteed.

NEMWA regulates the storage, treatment, recycling and disposal of waste, among other things, including waste generated by the mining sector. Its provisions are also relevant generally to the Company's operations. Waste management licenses ( **WMLs** ) are required for certain waste management activities, dependent on certain thresholds in relation to the waste. Although WMLs are generally not required for waste storage, such activities must comply with certain norms and standards. Residue stockpiles and deposits relating to prospecting, mining, exploration or production activities regulated under the MPRDA were previously exempt from NEMWA. This was changed by amendments under the NEMLAA and WMLs were required from the Minister for residue stockpiles and deposits since September 2, 2014, if they constitute waste and if they fall above the thresholds for which a WML is required, unless an entity lawfully conducted these activities prior to September 2, 2014. The National Environmental Laws Amendment Bill B14D-2017 ("**NEMA Bill**") has proposed amendments to NEMWA such that the regulation of residue stockpiles and deposits are removed from NEMWA and will be regulated by NEMA. If so, WMLs will not be required for residue stockpiles and deposits. In terms of the 2014 EIA Regulations, an EA would however be required.

---

Both the MPRDA and NEMA have provisions regulating rehabilitation and closure, which are not entirely consistent. The MPRDA provides that a mineral right holder remains liable for any environmental liability, pollution, ecological degradation, the pumping and treatment of extraneous water, compliance to the conditions of the EA and the management and sustainable closure of a mine, until the Minister of Mineral Resources has issued a closure certificate ( **Rehabilitation and Closure Liability** ). NEMA provides that a mineral right holder remains responsible for Rehabilitation and Closure Liability notwithstanding the issue of a closure certificate.

Under the MPRDA and NEMA, when the Minister issues a closure certificate, he may retain any portion of such financial provision for latent and residual safety, health or environmental impact which may become known in the future.

The Pre-MPRDA Amendment Act Environmental Provisions required that financial provision for environment rehabilitation and closure costs must be provided by an applicant for a mineral right prior to the approval of an EMP. NEMA now requires that this financial provision must be made prior to the issuing of an EA under NEMA.

New Financial Provision Regulations in regard to rehabilitation were published under NEMA on November 20, 2015, which have been highly contentious due to gaps and contradictions with the *Income Tax Act No. 58 of 1962*; MPRDA and NEMA. They will require a substantial increase in financial provision required for rehabilitation, as they are far more onerous and now require financial provision to be provided for annual rehabilitation and, more significantly, the remediation of latent or residual environmental impacts which may become known in the future including the pumping and treatment of polluted or extraneous water ( **Future Rehabilitation** ). The Minerals Council of South Africa (formerly the Chamber of Mines) has stated that the Financial Provision Regulations could have a crippling effect on the mining industry. The Financial Provision Regulations are the subject of a recent High Court application for an order clarifying their legality and/or meaning. Two sets of proposed amendments were published to the Financial Provision Regulations which, if enacted into law, may resolve some of the gaps and contradictions. A further set of proposed amendments is anticipated to be published shortly. An extension has been granted for compliance with the Financial Provision Regulations to February 2020. This extension is ambiguously drafted but appears to apply to companies who submitted an application for a mining right or holders of rights where the application was submitted or right was granted prior to the Financial Provision Regulations coming into force on 20 November 2015. Applicants for new mining rights submitted after 20 November 2015 are however still required to provide financial provision in terms of the Financial Provision Regulations. Trust funds may only be used for Future Rehabilitation and not annual or final rehabilitation (being the decommissioning and closure of the prospecting, exploration, mining or production operations at the end of the life of operations). The financial vehicle used for Future Rehabilitation must, on issuance of a closure certificate, be ceded to the Minister or if a trust fund is used, the trustees must authorise payment to the Minister. The aforesaid is contradictory to the Minister's discretion in the MPRDA and NEMA to retain a portion of the financial provision.

---

A mining or prospecting right can be suspended or cancelled under the MPRDA or a mining right application may be refused if there is non-compliance with environmental legislation.

### ***Mine Safety***

Mine safety in South Africa is governed by the MHSA, which is enforced by the Inspectorate of Mine Health and Safety, a part of the DMR. The reporting provisions of the MHSA are aligned with the International Labour Organization's Code of Practice on Recording and Notification of Occupational Accidents and Diseases. Under the MHSA, the Company is obligated, among other things, to ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that the Company's mines are designed, constructed and equipped to provide conditions for safe operation and a healthy working environment and are commissioned, operated, maintained and decommissioned in such a way that employees can perform their work without endangering their health and safety or that of any other person. The Company is also obliged to ensure, as far as reasonably practicable, that persons who are not employees, but who may be directly affected by the Company's mining activities are not exposed to any hazards relating to their health and safety. The MHSA also authorises mine inspectors to issue safety compliance notices to mines under section 55 of the MHSA and, should the inspectors feel that the action is warranted, to temporarily close part or all of the operations under powers conferred by section 54 of the MHSA, pending compliance with the - compliance notice.

An employer who has been instructed to temporarily close a mine or any part thereof in a section 54 notice has the remedy of approaching the Labour Court for urgent relief to suspend the operation of the section 54 notice until a review application to set aside that notice is determined by the Labour Court.

The *Mine Health and Safety Amendment Act, No. 74 of 2008*, which came into effect on May 30, 2009, criminalizes violations of the MHSA, increases the maximum fines to Rand 1 million per occurrence and creates the possibility that mining rights could be revoked for continued safety violations. A number of guidelines on the implementation of mandatory codes of practice under sections 9(2) and 9(3) of the MHSA have been issued by the Chief Inspector of Mines and govern the provision of personal protective equipment for women in the SA Mining Industry; trackless mobile machines; cyanide management; underground rail bound equipment; conveyor belt installation for transport of mineral, material or personnel; and risk-based fatigue management.

### ***Royalty Payments***

The Royalty Act, imposes a royalty on the first transfer of refined or unrefined minerals, payable to the state, calculated on the actual or deemed gross sales amount at the statutorily determined saleable condition (i.e. whether the mineral is in a refined or unrefined condition as determined in accordance with Schedule 1 and 2, respectively, of the Royalty Act).

The royalty rate in respect of refined minerals is calculated by dividing earnings before interest and taxes, or **EBIT** (as defined for purposes of the Royalty Act), by the product of 12.5 times gross revenue, calculated as a percentage, plus an additional 0.5%. EBIT refers to the taxable mining income of the holder of the right (with certain exceptions such as no deduction for interest payable and foreign exchange losses) before assessed losses but after capital expenditure. There is also an arm's length adjustment, where applicable. A maximum royalty rate of 5% of revenue applies to refined minerals.

---

The royalty rate in respect of unrefined minerals is calculated by dividing EBIT by the product of nine times gross revenue, calculated as a percentage, plus an additional 0.5% . A maximum royalty rate of 7% applies to unrefined minerals.

### *Mining Taxation Review*

In the 2013 Budget Speech, the Minister of Finance announced that the mineral and petroleum royalty regime has broadened the South African tax base and allowed for increased revenue during periods of high commodity prices, while providing relief to marginal mines when commodity prices and profitability are low. The broader review of the South African tax system will consider whether this approach is sufficiently robust and assess what the most appropriate mining tax regime is to ensure that South Africa remains a competitive investment destination.

To give effect to announcements made by the Minister of Finance in his 2013 budget speech, the Davis Tax Committee ("**DTC**") was established to assess South Africa's tax policy framework and its role in supporting the objectives of inclusive growth, employment, development and fiscal sustainability. The Terms of Reference of the Davis Tax Committee includes a review of the current mining tax regime. The Davis Tax Committee submitted its First Interim Report on Mining on July 1, 2015 and made various recommendations, including that:

the mining corporate income tax regime be aligned with the tax system applicable to other taxpaying sectors generally, leaving the royalty system to respond to the non-renewable nature of mineral resources; and

the upfront capital expenditure write-off regime be discontinued and replaced with an accelerated capital expenditure depreciation regime in parity with the write-off periods provided for in respect of manufacturing assets.

These recommendations are still under consideration by the South African government.

The DTC released its second and final report on hard-rock mining in December 2016.

Amongst the various proposals, the DTC recommended that the upfront CAPEX write-off regime should be discontinued and replaced with an accelerated CAPEX depreciation regime. The accelerated CAPEX depreciation regime will provide for write-off periods in line with that of manufacturing, namely on a 40/20/20/20. The removal of the upfront CAPEX tax allowance regime paves the way for the removal of ring fences aimed at preventing the set-off of future CAPEX expenditure against the tax base of other mining operations and against non-mining income.

The second and final report also indicated that comprehensive review of carbon taxes has been undertaken by a separate stream within the DTC and therefore the report contains no comments on carbon taxes.

The Minister of Finance might adopt these recommendations which in turn might impact of the net present value and internal rate of return of the project.

---

### ***Exchange Control***

South African law provides for Exchange Control which, among other things, regulates the flow of capital from the Common Monetary Area of South Africa, Namibia, Lesotho and eSwatini (formerly ESwatini) ( **CMA** ). The *Currency and Exchanges Act, No. 9 of 1933* empowers the President of South Africa to make regulations in regard to any matter directly or indirectly relating to currency, banking or exchanges. The Minister of Finance is responsible for all matters regarding exchange control policy, and certain of these powers and functions have been delegated to the South African Reserve Bank, more specifically the Financial Surveillance Department.

The Exchange Control Regulations, which are administered by the Financial Surveillance Department are applied throughout the CMA and regulate transactions involving South African exchange control residents, including companies. The basic purpose of the Exchange Control Regulations is to mitigate the negative effects caused by a decline of foreign capital reserves in South Africa, which may result in the devaluation of the Rand against other currencies. It is the stated objective of the authorities to achieve equality of treatment between residents and non-residents for exchange control purposes as it relates to inflows and outflows of capital. While the South African government has relaxed exchange controls in recent years, the Company expects current exchange controls to remain in place for the foreseeable future.

The Company is subject to various forms of such controls. The Company is generally not permitted to export capital from South Africa, hold foreign currency, incur indebtedness denominated in foreign currencies or acquire an interest in a foreign venture without the approval of the relevant South African exchange control authorities.

However, there are no exchange control restrictions between the members of the CMA as they form a single exchange control territory. Lesotho, Namibia and Eswatini have their own exchange control authorities as well as their own acts or regulations and rulings but in terms of the Common Monetary Area Agreement, their application must be at least as strict as that of South Africa. Accordingly, the Company will not require the approval of the Financial Surveillance Department for investments and transfers of funds from South Africa to other CMA countries.

### ***Carbon Tax/Climate Change Policies***

After having published a number of papers on the introduction of a carbon tax, the South African government released the Second Draft Carbon Tax Bill 2017 (the **Bill** ) published in December 2017, together with an Explanatory Memorandum in respect of the Bill (the **Explanatory Memorandum** ). The Bill was open for comment until March 9, 2018 and is now being considered by the South African Parliament. The South African Minister of Finance recently announced that carbon tax will be implemented from June 1, 2019.

In terms of the Paris Agreement under the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change, South Africa's greenhouse gas ( **GHG** ) emissions are said to firstly peak from the period 2020 until 2025, then plateau from the period 2025 until 2035, whereafter GHG emissions are said to decline from 2036. The introduction of carbon tax will also take place in a phased manner, which allows for developmental challenges faced by South Africa, encourages investment in more energy efficient technology and ensures that South Africa's competitiveness is not being compromised.

---

The South African national treasury noted in the Explanatory Memorandum that the impact of the first phase has been designed to be revenue neutral, and revenues will be recycled by way of reducing the current electricity generation levy, credit rebate for the renewable energy premium, as well as a tax incentive for energy efficiency savings.

Section 5 of the Bill proposes that the rate of carbon tax will be R120 per ton of carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>e) above the tax free allowances, with an annual increase of the consumer price inflation plus 2% until December 31, 2022. Following December 31, 2022, the rate of the increase is required to be made in line with inflation as determined by Statistics South Africa going forward.

Sections 7 to 13 of the Bill allows for the following tax-free allowances which were extensively considered following the publication of the First Draft Carbon Tax Bill 2015 (First Bill), and commented upon in the 2015 First Bill Response Document:

basic allowance for fuel combustible emissions of 60%;

allowance for industrial process emissions of 10%;

allowance in respect of fugitive emissions of 10%;

trade exposure allowance of up to a maximum of 10%;

performance allowance not exceeding 5% of the total GHG emissions of the taxpayer;

carbon budget allowance of 5% for companies who have a carbon budget, which means a limit on total GHG emissions from a specific company, within a specific period of time; and

carbon offset allowance of either 5% or 10%.

On November 12, 2018 the National Treasury published the *Draft Regulation on the Carbon Offset* for a second round of public comment and further consultation. These draft regulations specifically address the carbon offset allowance. Only certain new approved projects will qualify, including clean development mechanism projects under the Kyoto Protocol (an amendment to the United Nations International Treaty on Global Warming in which participating nations commit to reducing their emissions of carbon dioxide, negotiated in Kyoto, Japan, in 1997), verified carbon standard projects, and gold standard projects. The offset may be utilised for periods ranging between 7 and 100 years, depending on the project. Various administrative procedures have been prescribed for registering for and claiming the offset allowance.

A taxpayer is only entitled to receive the sum of the allowances mentioned above in respect of a tax period to the extent that the sum of the allowances does not exceed 95% of the total GHG emissions.

Taking into account the tax-free thresholds, this would imply that an initial effective carbon tax rate will be as low as R6 to R48 per ton CO<sub>2</sub>e.

### ***South African Companies Act***

The Company's South African subsidiaries are subject to the *South African Companies Act, No. 71 of 2008* ( **Companies Act** ) which came into force on May 1, 2011. The aim of the Companies Act is to modernize company law in South Africa so that it is comparable with leading jurisdictions around the world.



The Companies Act has introduced numerous new legal concepts into South African company law, and there are therefore some areas of uncertainty in the application and implementation of the Companies Act in these early stages of its existence. Various compliance obligations have been brought about for companies and their boards, including a requirement to ensure that a company's constitutional documents are aligned with the Companies Act, and that any shareholders' agreements that are in place are aligned with the company's memorandum of incorporation and the Companies Act. There was essentially a two-year grace period for such alignment process to take place, in that, subject to certain exceptions, for two years after the commencement date of the Companies Act (May 1, 2011), a pre-existing company's shareholders' agreement and/or constitutional documents would have prevailed in the case of any inconsistency with the Companies Act. The position currently, after the lapse of the grace period, is that a company's memorandum of incorporation prevails over the shareholders' agreement and the Companies Act in turn prevails over both. Although not peremptory, the Company has registered new memoranda of incorporation for the Company's South African subsidiaries.

The Companies Act also requires that certain categories of companies have in place certain committees, namely audit committees (for all public and state-owned companies) and social and ethics committees (for all listed public companies and state-owned companies as well as other companies that reach a certain public interest score in terms of the Companies Regulations, 2011). The public interest score takes into account the number of shareholders and employees of the company, as well as the amount of the company's debt and annual turnover.

Failure to comply with the Companies Act can lead to compliance notices being issued by the CIPC, administrative fines and civil liability for damages caused by non-compliance. The Company's South African subsidiaries may also be liable under the Companies Act to any other person for any loss or damage suffered by that person as a result of the Company's subsidiary's non-compliance with the Companies Act.

The Companies Act extends shareholders' rights and recourse against companies and directors. Also, directors, prescribed officers and committee members will now face more extensive and stricter grounds for personal liability for their actions in carrying out their functions within the company than was the case under the previous regime. The Companies Act introduces class action suits against companies, directors and company officers by persons whose rights are affected by the company. Companies will thus face a greater risk of litigation and the costs thereof. Minority shareholders' rights in the context of mergers and other fundamental transactions have also been increased substantially, such as the introduction of appraisal rights and the ability to set aside and review special resolutions approving such transactions. This could result in the hindrance of such transactions.

The Companies Act has also introduced fairly extensive regulation of financial assistance given among related and inter related companies, in that there must be shareholder approval, compliance with solvency and liquidity tests, and fairness and reasonableness in relation to such financial assistance. This for instance affects intra group loan and security arrangements, as well transactions with third parties where guarantees or other security within a group of companies is given. This affects financial assistance given by South African companies and would accordingly affect financial assistance given by South African companies to non-South African related entities.

The Companies Act prohibits companies from creating any further par value shares. If a company wishes to increase its share capital, it will have to convert all of its pre-existing par value shares into shares of no par value. The revenue authorities have issued a ruling with respect to the tax treatment of such conversions to the effect that such conversions shall not be viewed as disposals. This may become relevant in respect of the Company's South African subsidiaries should their share capital be required to be increased at any stage for whatever reason.

---

An important innovation of the Companies Act is that of business rescue, which is modelled to some extent on the United States Chapter 11 bankruptcy procedures. Business rescue is a largely non-judicial, commercial process that aims to rescue a financially distressed company and maximize the likelihood of the company's continued existence on a solvent basis.

Companies in South Africa can be deregistered if they fail to timeously lodge their annual returns. This means that the company ceases to exist as a separate juristic person, and that all of its rights and assets devolve to the state by operation of law. A company's registration can be reinstated by application either to the CIPC or the High Court. Currently, under the Companies Act there is uncertainty in the case-law around the exact legal consequences of such reinstatement and whether the rights and assets automatically re-vest, with retrospective effect, in the company. The Company ensures that at all times the requisite filings and returns of its South African subsidiaries with CIPC are up-to-date and thereby ensures that such subsidiaries are not deregistered.

### ***Land Use***

The Spatial Planning and Land Use Management Act 16 of 2013 ("**SPLUMA**") prescribes principles for the regulation of land use in South Africa on a national, provincial and municipal level. However, land use planning is mainly regulated on a municipal level since municipalities are constitutionally empowered to regulate the effective administration of land use planning within their respective jurisdictions. Municipal land use planning is regulated through municipal planning by-laws, spatial development frameworks and land use or zoning schemes. Land-use or zoning schemes reflect all permissible land use rights in respect of land situated within the municipality's area of jurisdiction. Deviations from the land-use or zoning scheme are only permissible upon application for the necessary departure, land use consent or re-zoning application, as regulated by the applicable scheme and the relevant municipal planning by-law read with SPLUMA.

While previously it was in dispute whether municipal planning had the power to regulate mining activities, April 2012 Constitutional Court judgments in the cases of *Maccsand (Proprietary) Limited v City of Cape Town and Others* and *Minister for Mineral Resources v Swartland Municipality and others* confirmed that town planning approvals and consents are required for mining activities. A High Court decision has indicated that such consents will likewise be required for prospecting activities. The effect of these judgments is that all mining and prospecting operations need to be conducted on land which is appropriately zoned for mining or prospecting. Mining companies run the risk of being interdicted from continuing with their operations pending a re-zoning if the land on which they are operating is not appropriately zoned. The practical implications of complying with these judgments are numerous. These include that there may be different land uses on one property, particularly where only prospecting is taking place. These implications will need to be considered further by the Company's operations. This is further complicated by the fact that there are several provincial land use planning laws for different provinces.

In addition to statutory controls, certain private law rights, such as the real rights created by way of registered restrictive conditions of title or servitudes, may also impact on land use planning in general. Land use or zoning schemes are subject to the real rights created by restrictive conditions of title. The implication is that if a land-use or zoning schemes permit a land use which is prohibited by a restrictive condition of title, such condition will first have to be removed in terms of the relevant legislation (municipal planning by-laws read with SPLUMA). Servitudes may also impact on land use planning, for instance servitudes registered in respect of infrastructure. Contravention of these real rights may result in a demolition order being granted in respect of unlawful development.

---

Another aspect which requires consideration is who should apply for such re-zoning. Although land owners would typically be the applicant, the Company's operations are not always conducted on land which the Company owns. Accordingly, the Company may have to obtain a power of attorney from the land owner to procure amendments to land use or zoning schemes in municipalities in which the Company intends to prospect or mine and has obtained rezoning permission where required.

### ***Dealing in Precious Metals***

All operations which acquire, refine, beneficiate, possess or dispose of gold, any metals of the platinum group, or any ores of such metals, are required to obtain authorisations to do so under the Precious Metals Act No. 37 of 2007. These authorisations include metal beneficiation licences, refining licences and precious metals export approvals. Applications for such authorisations must be made to the South African Diamond and Precious Metals Regulator. Refining licences can be issued for up to 30 years, whilst precious metals beneficiation licences can be issued for periods of up to ten years. The issue of certain licences under the Precious Metals Act requires that the applicant be compliant with the BEE provisions of the Mining Charter 2018.

### ***Land Claims***

Under the Restitution of Land Rights Act 22 of 1994 ("**Restitution Act**"), as amended, any person who was dispossessed of rights in land in South Africa after June 19, 1913 as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices without payment of just and equitable compensation is granted certain remedies and is entitled to redress. In terms of the Restitution Act, persons entitled to institute a land claim were required to lodge their claims by December 31, 1998.

The Restitution Act also entitles the South African Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform ("**Minister**") to acquire ownership of land or rights in land by way of expropriation and to transfer the expropriated land or rights in land to successful claimants. Notably, the Minister may elect not to expropriate land and may provide alternative relief to the claimant, as directed by section 25(7) of the Constitution. Expropriation would be subject to provisions of the Expropriation Act 63 of 1975 and section 25(2) of the Constitution, which provide, in general, for just and equitable compensation.

The South African Minister of Rural Development and Land Reform may not, however, restore land to a claimant without a court order or an agreement being reached between the affected parties for the purposes of achieving restitution.

The Restitution Amendment Act came into effect on July 1, 2014. The Restitution Amendment Act introduced significant amendments to the Restitution Act, most notably allowing for land claims by persons previously disposed of land under apartheid laws to again be submitted, despite the previous cut-of date having expired approximately 15 years ago. The new period for lodging claims will be until June 30, 2019, which may arguably create a possible resurgence of new restitution claims. However, in *Land Access Movement of South Africa and Others v Chairperson of the National Council of Provinces and Others*, the Constitutional Court found that the Restitution Amendment Act was invalid as parliament failed to satisfy its obligation to facilitate public involvement in accordance with section 72(1)(a) of the Constitution. As a result, the Constitutional Court interdicted the Commission of Restitution of Land Rights from processing claims lodged from July 1, 2014 until all claims submitted prior to December 31, 1998 in terms of section 6(1)(a) of the Restitution Act have been finalised. Parliament has since this judgment circulated a bill, which will repeal the Amendment Act, once promulgated. In terms of this bill, the new period for the lodging of claims will still be until June 30, 2019.

In order to substantiate a claim for restitution, a person is required to demonstrate that:

he/she is a person, or it is a deceased estate dispossessed of a right in land after June 19, 1913, as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices;

he/she is the direct descendant of a person referred to above who has died without lodging a claim and has no ascendant who: (i) is a direct descendant of a person referred to above and (ii) has lodged a claim for the restitution of a right in land; or

it is a community or part of a community dispossessed of a right in land after June 19, 1913, as a result of past racially discriminatory laws or practices.

Under the Restitution Act a successful claimant may be granted either return of the dispossessed land (referred to as restoration ) or equitable redress (which includes the granting of an appropriate right in alternative state-owned land; or payment of compensation). If restoration is claimed, the Restitution Act requires, *inter alia*, the feasibility of such restoration to be considered. Under recent case law, restoration of land may only be given in circumstances where a claimant can use the land productively, with the feasibility of restoration being dependent on the costs.

The procedure for lodging a land claim is that a claim must be lodged with the Land Claims Commissioner. The land claim will then be investigated by the Land Claims Commissioner, after which the claim will be published in the Government Gazette and in the media circulating nationally and in the relevant province. The Restitution Act provides that, if at any stage during the course of the investigation of a land claim, it becomes evident that:

there are two or more competing claims in respect of the same land (whether by communities or otherwise); or

the land that is subject to the claim is not state-owned land, and the owner or holder of rights in such land is opposed to the claim; or

there is any other issue which might usefully be resolved through mediation and negotiation, the Chief Land Claims Commissioner may direct the parties concerned to attempt to settle their dispute through mediation or negotiation. It further provides that if, upon completion of an investigation of a land claim, it is agreed that it is not possible to settle the claim by mediation or negotiation, the claim may be referred to the Land Claims Court for final determination.

### ***Beneficiation***

The beneficiation of mineral resources in South Africa is regulated by three main pieces of legislation, namely the MPRDA, through section 26 thereof, the *Precious Metals Act, No. 37 of 2005* and the *Diamonds Act, No. 58 of 1986* (as amended).

---

In addition to the legislative framework aimed at promoting local beneficiation of minerals, the DMR has developed and adopted a beneficiation strategy which identifies value chains for the purpose of beneficiation of certain minerals in South Africa (which is also in line with the developmental goals set-out in the National Development Plan adopted by the South African government). The Mining Charter 2018 (as discussed above) also includes an incentive for mining companies to offset the value of the level of beneficiation achieved by the company against a portion of its BEE Entrepreneur ownership requirement, not exceeding 15%, in an effort to promote local beneficiation.

The legislation at the center of the initiation or promotion of beneficiation of mineral resources is the MPRDA. Section 26 of the MPRDA regulates the Minister's power to initiate and promote beneficiation of minerals in South Africa. The term "beneficiation" was not defined by the MPRDA. The MPRDA Amendment Act, 2008 introduced a definition for beneficiation, which will again be amended by the Amendment Bill. The Amendment Bill defines beneficiation as, *the transformation, value addition or downstream beneficiation of a mineral and petroleum resource (or a combination of minerals) to a higher value product, over baselines to be determined by the Minister, which can either be consumed locally or exported*. As the section currently reads, the Minister may prescribe levels of beneficiation of a particular mineral should he establish, on advice from the Minerals and Mining Board and consulting with the Minister of Trade and Industry, that a particular mineral can be beneficiated economically in South Africa. Further, a person who intends to beneficiate any minerals mined in South Africa, outside of the country may only do so with the written consent of and in consultation with the Minister.

### ***Labour Relations Act***

The Constitution gives every person the right to fair labour practices. The *Labour Relations Act, No. 66 of 1995* ( **LRA** ) is the principal legislation that gives effect to the framework in which employees, employers and industrial relations at an individual and collective level are regulated. As a premise the LRA regulates the manner in which employees, employers, trade unions and employer's organizations interact and engage with one another in the work place. This includes processes related to collective bargaining, wage determination, determination of terms and conditions of employment, the formulation of industrial policy and employee participation in the decision-making processes.

The LRA framework holistically is geared at the protection of employee and employer rights through various structures. Principally the LRA allows for the creation of trade unions and employer's organizations. The extent of entitlement of the trade union is subject to the size of its membership base. Depending on the number of employees who are members of the trade union, the trade union will be allowed access to the workplace, representation at the workplace, to have meetings at the workplace and to access to information concerned with the employment of the employees. To be entitled to enter into collective agreements with the employer, the trade union must have as its members the majority of the employees at the workplace. The LRA endorses a co-operative approach whereby two or more trade unions can aggregate their membership for the purposes of achieving majority status in a collective bargaining unit or forum.

Collective agreements entered into between the trade union and the employer will bind all employees employed by the employer, regardless of their trade union affiliations, for the whole period of the agreement. The LRA does not provide for a statutory duty to bargain collectively or otherwise, and therefore such conduct is purely a voluntary decision.

---

At a greater level the LRA allows for the creation of bargaining and statutory councils. Such councils can be established both for more than one registered trade union or employer's organization. Such councils will be established per sector or area. Councils in this regard will, amongst others, be entitled to conclude collective agreements and to engage in the resolution of disputes.

If a dispute between the employer and employee arises the LRA clearly delineates the lawful context in which this may occur. As a premise the LRA strictly stipulates and regulates the requirements for a lawful strike, lockout or picketing. In this regard the LRA expressly identifies who is allowed to engage in industrial action of this nature, which processes must be followed and for which purposes employees and employers may engage in such industrial action. Should the industrial action require the parties to engage in a process of consultation and negotiation, the LRA also prescribes the procedures to be followed.

If the conduct of the parties, for whatever reason, result in the dismissal of employees the LRA establishes the Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration ( **CCMA** ) as a principal forum for the resolution of disputes resulting from the dismissal. The LRA defines unlawful dismissals as being either automatically or not automatically unfair. The type of dismissal will depend on the nature thereof and the prevailing circumstances at the time of dismissal, an example being dismissals arising from operational requirements.

A process of mediation and conciliation is pre-emptory in this regard. Should the dispute remain unresolved, parties will be required to enter into a process of arbitration, and the award made by the Commissioner would be final.

### ***Employment Equity Act***

The Employment *Equity Act*, No. 55 of 1998 ("**EEA**") places an obligation on employers to promote equal opportunity in the workplace by, amongst other things, eliminating any forms of unfair discrimination in the workplace.

Section 6 of the EEA prohibits any employment practice or policy which discriminates, directly or indirectly, against any employee on any '*arbitrary ground*' or one or more of the grounds specifically listed in the section

*'race, gender, sex, pregnancy, marital status, family responsibility, ethnic or social origin, colour, sexual orientation, age, disability, religion, HIV status, conscience, belief, political opinion, culture, language and birth'*.

Where discrimination is alleged on one of the specified grounds, it is presumed to be unfair; if the discrimination is based on some other arbitrary ground, the complainant must establish unfairness.

Pursuant to recent amendments, the EEA now provides that a difference in the terms and conditions of employment between employees of the same employer, which are performing the same or substantially the same work or work of equal value, amounts to unfair discrimination. It is important to note that the relevant provision refers to 'a difference in the terms and conditions' of employment and is not only limited to a difference in remuneration. Nevertheless, to prove such discrimination, the employee will need to demonstrate that the reason for the difference in treatment is based on one of the listed grounds or any other arbitrary ground.

---

Any party may refer a dispute for unfair discrimination to the CCMA which, in turn, must attempt to resolve the dispute through conciliation. Should the conciliation be unsuccessful, either party may refer the dispute to the Labour Court for adjudication.

Alternatively, an employee may refer the dispute directly to the CCMA for arbitration if that specific employee earns below the earnings threshold as prescribed by the Minister of Labour. The current earnings threshold is R205 433.30 per annum. Irrespective of the foregoing, the employee may also directly approach the CCMA to resolve the dispute through arbitration where the employee's claim for unfair discrimination is based on alleged sexual harassment. Then again, the parties can also agree to refer the matter to the CCMA for arbitration.

### **C. Organizational Structure**

The Company's material subsidiaries as at August 31, 2018 were comprised of one wholly-owned company, a 49.9% holding in a second company, and a direct and indirect 50.02% holding in a third company, all of which are incorporated under the company laws of the Republic of South Africa. The following chart represents the Company's corporate organization as at the date of filing of this Annual Report:

### **Notes**

- (1) Remaining 50.1% interest owned by Mlibo Gladly Mgudlwa and Luyanda Mgudlwa. Qualified BEE Co.
-

- (2) Remaining interest owned as to 21.95% by Japan Oil Gas and Metals Corp. and 15% by Impala Platinum Holdings Ltd.

As at the date of filing of this Annual Report, the Company's only material mineral property is the Waterberg Project (the **Waterberg Project**), which is comprised of two adjacent project areas formerly known as the Waterberg Joint Venture Project and the Waterberg Extension Project. The Waterberg Project is held by Waterberg JV Co., in which the Company is the largest owner, with a 50.02% beneficial interest, of which 37.05% is held directly by PTM RSA and 12.974% is held indirectly through PTM RSA's 49.9% interest in Mnombo, a Broad-Based Socio-Economic Empowerment (BEE) company which holds 26.0% of Waterberg JV Co. The remaining interests in Waterberg JV Co. are held as to 21.95% by a nominee of JOGMEC and 15.0% by Implats. PTM RSA is the manager of Waterberg JV Co. Waterberg JV Co. and its shares are governed by a shareholders agreement (the **Waterberg Shareholders Agreement**) and its memorandum of incorporation. To cause the board of directors of Waterberg JV Co. to take action, PTM RSA must generally obtain the approval of the board representatives of at least one other shareholder, which may be Mnombo, in which the Company has a 49.9% interest. In addition, certain matters must be approved by a majority, 80% or 90% vote of the Waterberg JV Co. shareholders, depending on the matter, or, in certain cases, by specific shareholders. The Waterberg Shareholders Agreement confirms the principles of BEE compliance and contemplates the potential transfer of equity and the issuance of additional equity to one or more broad based black empowerment partners, at fair value in certain circumstances, including a change in law or imposition of a requirement upon Waterberg JV Co. In certain circumstances, Mnombo may be diluted with equity transferred or issued to different black empowerment shareholders.

Implats has been granted a call option exercisable in certain circumstances to purchase and earn into a 50.01% interest in Waterberg JV Co. For more detail about the Implats Transaction see Item 4.A. Recent Developments November 2017 Implats Transaction

#### **D. Property, Plants and Equipment**

##### **Material Mineral Property Interests**

##### ***Waterberg Project***

The Waterberg Project is located 85 km north of the town of Mokopane (formerly Potgietersrus) in the province of Limpopo, South Africa, approximately 330 km NW from Johannesburg. The property covers 99,244.79 hectares and is approximately centred on UTM coordinate (Latitude 23°21' 53" S, Longitude 28°48' 23" E). Elevation ranges from approximately 880 to 1365 meters above sea level.

Waterberg JV Co. holds active prospecting rights covering an area of 92,672.15 hectares. An application for a mining right covering an area of 20,482.42 hectares was filed with the DMR Polokwane Regional Office and was accepted on September 14, 2018 for consideration. The mining right application area consists of farms of active prospecting rights and farms of prospecting rights which expired after the mining right application was filed. The rights of the holder to minerals from both active and expired prospecting rights remain in place when covered by a valid mining right application or granted mining right. The total project area, including active prospecting rights and the mining right application, covers a total of 99,244.79 hectares.

---



Prospecting rights are valid for a period of five years, with one renewal of up to three years. Furthermore, the MPRDA provides for a retention period after prospecting of up to three years with one renewal of up to two years, subject to certain conditions. The holder of a prospecting right granted under the MPRDA has the exclusive right to apply for and, subject to compliance with the requirements of the MPRDA, to be granted, a mining right in respect of the prospecting area in question. On October 10, 2018 the Company announced that mining right application for the Waterberg Project recently filed by Waterberg JV Co. had been accepted by the DMR for consideration.

On September 21, 2017, the Company completed the planned corporatization of the Waterberg Project by the transfer of all Waterberg Project prospecting rights held by PTM RSA on behalf of the joint venture participants into Waterberg JV Co.

Effective September 21, 2017 Waterberg JV Co. owned 100% of the prospecting rights comprising the entire Waterberg Project area and Waterberg JV Co. was owned 45.65% by PTM RSA, 28.35% by JOGMEC and 26% by Mnombo, giving the Company total direct and indirect ownership of 58.62% at that time.

On October 16, 2017 Implats entered into definitive agreements with the Company, JOGMEC, Mnombo and Waterberg JV Co., whereby Implats purchased shares of Waterberg JV Co. representing a 15.0% interest in the Waterberg Project from PTM RSA (8.6%) and JOGMEC (6.4%) for \$30.0 million, giving the Company total direct and indirect ownership of 50.02% .

The Waterberg Project is located on a newly-discovered extension of the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex. Anglo American Platinum Limited s ( **Amplats** ) Mogalakwena mine is a Platreef asset also located on the Northern Limb. The detailed scope of work for the DFS has been agreed. The DFS will investigate two options - a 600,000 tonne per month mine (744,000 ounces PGEs per year), and a second lower capital option at 250,000 to 350,000 tonnes per month. The selection of the DFS team has also been agreed and tenders for engineering groups have been completed and Stantec and DRA have been selected as the lead independent project engineers. A substantial portion of the Waterberg Project prospecting area remains unexplored.

The Waterberg Project is derived from a group of exploration projects that came from a regional target initiative by the Company conceived in 2007 and 2008. The projects target a previously unknown extension to the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex in South Africa. The Company selected this target from a list of new ideas provided by a team of South African geoscientists. Detailed geophysical and other work indicated potential for a package of Bushveld Complex rocks under the sedimentary Waterberg formation cover rocks. Previous mineral exploration activities in the area were limited due to the extensive sedimentary cover. Exploration by the Company therefore progressed through preliminary exploration activities to delineate initial drill targets to primarily drilling focused work now that a deposit has been discovered.

The Waterberg Project is managed and explored according to a joint technical committee and is currently planned for development according to the objective of achieving a best outcome scenario for shareholders and stakeholders.

### ***Technical Report Waterberg***

Technical information in this Annual Report regarding the Waterberg Project is derived from the October 2018 Waterberg Report. In addition to the October 2018 Waterberg Report, a SAMREC 2016 compliant Mineral Resource statement has been prepared and signed-off by the Independent Geological Qualified Person. The Independent Geological Qualified Person for the October 2018 Waterberg Report and the companion SAMREC Mineral Resource statement is Mr. Charles J Muller, (B.Sc. (Hons) Geology) Pr. Sci. Nat. (Reg. No. 400201/04), CJM Consulting (Pty) Ltd. The following summary is qualified in its entirety with reference to the full text of the October 2018 Waterberg Report, which is incorporated by reference herein. The use of \$ in the October 2018 Waterberg Report denotes USD.



The October 2018 Waterberg Report supersedes the Company's prior technical report and pre-feasibility study with respect to the Waterberg Project. Prior technical reports and studies relating to the Waterberg Project should no longer be relied upon.

The October 2018 Waterberg Report has been evaluated and prepared in accordance with NI 43-101 to comply with the requirements for a mineral resource estimate. The October 2018 Waterberg Report complies with disclosure and reporting requirements set forth in the TSX Manual, NI 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects, Companion Policy 43-101CP to NI 43-101, and Form 43-101F1 of NI 43-101. The October 2018 Waterberg Report includes measured, indicated and inferred mineral resources. Only measured and indicated resources will be incorporated into the mine plan and financial model for the DFS now in process. The reader is cautioned that all estimates of mineral resources have been prepared in accordance with NI 43-101 and the Company has not disclosed or determined any mineral reserves under SEC Industry Guide 7 standards.

### ***Waterberg Project Summary***

*(Excerpted from the October 2018 Waterberg Report)*

#### **Introduction**

CJM Consulting (South Africa) Pty Limited (CJM) was requested by Waterberg JV Resources (Pty) Ltd. (Waterberg JV Resources), on behalf of Platinum Group Metals Ltd (PTML), the issuer, to complete an Independent Technical Report on the update for the Mineral Resources Waterberg Project. The project covers a buried portion of the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex where a deposit containing Platinum Group Metals (PGMs), gold and base metals (Cu, Ni) was discovered through drilling. The objective of this report is to provide an update to the Mineral Resources on the Waterberg project, in accordance with disclosure and reporting requirements set forth in the Toronto Stock Exchange Manual, National Instrument 43-101 Standards of Disclosure for Mineral Projects (NI 43-101), Companion Policy 43-101CP to NI 43-101, and Form 43-101F1 of NI 43-101 as well as the South African Code for the Reporting of Exploration Results, Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves (The SAMREC Code), 2016 edition.

#### **Project Area and Location**

The Waterberg Project is located some 85 km north of the town of Mokopane (formerly Potgietersrus), within Limpopo Province, South Africa and covers an area along the strike length of the previously unknown northward extension of the Bushveld Complex. The Project can be accessed via dirt roads exiting off sealed highway N11.

---

### **Waterberg Project**

The Waterberg Project is comprised of several prospecting rights and a pending mining right application covering an area of 99,244.79 ha. The Project is owned by a consortium consisting of Platinum Group Metals Ltd., Mnombo Wethu Consultants (Pty) Ltd. (Mnombo), Japan Oil, Gas and Metals National Corporation (JOGMEC) and Impala Platinum Holdings Ltd. (Implats). The area of the prospecting rights extends some 39 km from north to south and 36 km from east to west. A Mining Right Application was filed over the mineral resource area and this application was accepted on September 14, 2017 for consideration by the Department of Mineral Resources. The process of consultation for the Mining Right and Environmental Assessment has commenced.

The Project Area is an extension of the trend at the northern tip of the Bushveld Complex and the discovery is the result of some detailed geophysical, geochemical and geological work that indicated potential for a package of Bushveld Complex rocks under the Waterberg Group sedimentary cover rocks.

### **Geological Setting, Deposit Type And Mineralisation**

The Bushveld and Molopo Complexes in the Kaapvaal Craton are two of the most well-known mafic/ultramafic layered intrusions in the world. The Bushveld Complex was intruded about 2,060 million years ago into rocks of the Transvaal Supergroup, largely along an unconformity between the Magaliesberg quartzite of the Pretoria Group and the overlying Rooiberg felsites. It is estimated to exceed 66,000 km<sup>2</sup> in extent, of which about 55% is covered by younger formations. The Bushveld Complex hosts several layers rich in Platinum Group Metals (PGM), chromium and vanadium, and constitutes the world's largest known Mineral Resources of these metals.

The Waterberg Project is situated off the northern end of the previously known Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex, where the mafic rocks have a different sequence to those of the Eastern and Western Limbs of the Bushveld Complex.

PGM mineralisation within the Bushveld package underlying the Waterberg Project is hosted in two main layers: T Zone and F Zone.

The T Zone occurs within the Main Zone just beneath the contact of the overlying Upper Zone. Although the T Zone consists of numerous mineralised layers, three potential economical layers were identified, TZ, T1 and T0 - Layers. They are composed mainly of anorthosite, pegmatoidal gabbros, pyroxenite, troctolite, harzburgite, gabbro-norite and norite.

The F Zone is hosted in a cyclic unit of olivine rich lithologies towards the base of the Main Zone towards the bottom of the Bushveld Complex. This zone consists of alternating units of harzburgite, troctolite and pyroxenites. The F Zone was divided into the FH (harzburgite) and FP (pyroxenite) layers. The FH layer has significantly higher volumes of olivine in contrast with the lower lying FP layer, which is predominately pyroxenite.

### **Project Geology**

The Waterberg Project is located along the strike extension of the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex. The geology consists predominantly of the Bushveld Main Zone gabbros, gabbro-norites, norites, pyroxenites and anorthositic rock types with more mafic rock material such as harzburgite and troctolites that partially grade into dunites towards the base of the package. In the southern part of the project area, Bushveld Upper Zone lithologies such as magnetite gabbros and gabbro-norites do occur as intersected in drillhole WB001 and WB002. The Lower Magnetite Layer of the Upper Zone was intersected on the south of the project property (Disseldorp 369 LR) where drillhole WB001 was drilled and intersected a 2.5 m thick magnetite band.



On the property, the Bushveld package strikes south-west to north-east with a general dip of 34° - 38° towards the west is observed from drillhole core for the layered units intersected on Waterberg property within the Bushveld Package. However, some structural blocks may be tilted at different angles depending on structural and /or tectonic controls.

The Bushveld Upper Zone is overlain by a 120 m to 760 m thick Waterberg Group which is a sedimentary package predominantly made up of sandstones, and within the project area the two sedimentary formations known as the Setlaole and Makgabeng Formations constitute the Waterberg Group. The Waterberg package is flat lying with dip angles ranging from 2° to 5°.

### **Exploration Status**

The Waterberg Project is at an advanced project that has undergone preliminary economic evaluations, and a Pre-Feasibility Study, which have warranted further work. Drilling to date has given the confidence to classify Mineral Resources as Inferred, Indicated and Measured. A Definitive Feasibility Study is in progress at the time of this report.

### **Sample Preparation**

The sampling methodology concurs with Waterberg JV Resources protocol based on industry best practice. The quality of the sampling is monitored and supervised by a qualified geologist. The sampling is done in a manner that includes the entire potentially economic unit, with enough shoulder sampling to ensure the entire economic zones are assayed.

### **Analysis**

For the present database, field samples were analysed by two different laboratories: the primary laboratory is currently Set Point laboratories (South Africa). Genalysis (Australia) is used for referee test work to confirm the accuracy of the primary laboratory.

Samples are received, sorted, verified and checked for moisture and dried if necessary. Each sample is weighed, and the results are recorded. Rocks, rock chips or lumps are crushed using a jaw crusher to less than 10 mm. The samples are then milled for 5 minutes to achieve a fineness of 90% less than 106 µm, which is the minimum requirement to ensure the best accuracy and precision during analysis.

Samples are analysed for Pt (ppm), Pd (ppm) Rh (ppm) and Au (ppm) by standard 25 g lead fire-assay using a silver collector. Rh (ppm) is assayed using the same method but with a palladium collector and only for selected samples. After pre-concentration by fire assay the resulting solutions are analysed using ICP-OES (Inductively Coupled Plasma Optical Emission Spectrometry).

The base metals (copper, nickel, cobalt and chromium) are analysed using ICP-OES (Inductively Coupled Plasma Optical Emission Spectrometry) after a multi-acid digestion. This technique results in almost total digestion.

The drilling, sampling and analytical aspects of the project are considered to have been undertaken to industry standards. The data is considered to be reliable and suitable for Mineral Resource estimation.

---

**Drilling**

The data from which the structure of the mineralised horizons was modelled, and grade values estimated were derived from a total of 359 932 meters of diamond drilling. This report updates the Mineral Resource estimate using this dataset. The drillhole dataset consists of 437 drillholes and 585 deflections, at the date of drill data cut-off (July 18, 2018).

The management of the drilling programmes, logging and sampling were undertaken from three facilities: one at the town of Marken in Limpopo Province, South Africa and the other on the farm Goedetrouw 366LR within the prospecting right area or at an exploration camp on the adjacent farm Harriet s Wish.

Drilled core is cleaned, de-greased and packed into metal core boxes by the drilling company. The core is collected from the drilling site daily by Waterberg JV Resources personnel and transported to the coreyard. Before the core is taken off the drilling site, core recovery and the depths are checked. Core logging is done by hand on a pro-forma sheet by qualified geologists under supervision of the Project Geologist.

**Quality Control And Quality Assurance**

Waterberg JV Resources have instituted a complete QA/QC programme including the insertion of blanks and certified reference materials as well as referee analyses. The programme is being followed and is to industry standard. The data is as a result, considered reliable in the opinion of the Qualified Person.

**Mineral Resources**

This report documents the Mineral Resource estimate - Effective Date: September 27, 2018. Infill drilling over portions of the project area and new estimation methodology has made it possible to estimate a new Mineral Resource estimate and upgrade portions of the Mineral Resource to the Measured category. All the joint venture partners have been involved in the development of the latest Mineral Resource model, appropriate cut-off grades, economic parameters and Mineral Resource model criteria. It has been determined in relation to basic working costs and in consideration of the overall resource envelope for the deposit, that at a 2.0 g/t cut-off grade the deposit has a reasonable prospect of economic extraction. The Mineral Resource Statement is summarised in Table 1. Notwithstanding the above, for purposes of the DFS, sensitivity analysis and comparison to the 2016 PFS, which utilized a 2.5 g/t 4E cut-off grade, a Mineral Resource estimate at a 2.5 g/t cut-off grade is the preferred scenario (Table 2).

---

Table 1: Summary of Mineral Resource effective September 27, 2018 on a 100% project basis at 2.0 g/t (4E) cut-off

T Zone at 2.0 g/t (4E) cut-off											
Mineral Resource Category	Cut-off	Tonnage	Grade							Metal	
	4E		Pt	Pd	Rh	Au	4E	Cu	Ni	4E	
	g/t	t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	%	%	kg	Moz
Measured	2.0	3 440 855	1.13	1.97	0.04	0.90	4.04	0.160	0.080	13 901	0.447
Indicated	2.0	22 997 505	1.22	2.06	0.03	0.79	4.10	0.186	0.090	94 290	3.031
M+I	2.0	26 438 360	1.21	2.05	0.03	0.80	4.09	0.183	0.089	108 191	3.478
Inferred	2.0	25 029 695	1.17	1.84	0.03	0.60	3.64	0.137	0.069	91108	2.929
Resource Category	Prill Split										
	Pt	Pd	Rh	Au							
	%	%	%	%							
Measured	28.0	48.8	1.0	22.2							
Indicated	29.8	50.2	0.7	19.3							
M+I	29.6	50.0	0.7	19.7							
Inferred	32.1	50.5	0.8	16.6							
F Zone 2.0 g/t (4E) cut-off											
Mineral Resource Category	Cut-off	Tonnage	Grade							Metal	
	4E		Pt	Pd	Rh	Au	4E	Cu	Ni	4E	
	g/t	t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	%	%	kg	Moz
Measured	2.0	75 332 513	0.82	2.00	0.05	0.14	3.01	0.079	0.191	226 833	7.293
Indicated	2.0	273 272 480	0.80	1.85	0.04	0.14	2.83	0.073	0.181	772 103	24.824
M+I	2.0	348 604 993	0.83	1.86	0.04	0.14	2.87	0.075	0.183	998 936	32.117
Inferred	2.0	121 535 227	0.70	1.62	0.04	0.13	2.50	0.067	0.162	303 722	9.765
Resource Category	Prill Split										
	Pt	Pd	Rh	Au							
	%	%	%	%							



<b>Measured</b>	27.2	66.4	1.7	4.7							
<b>Indicated</b>	28.3	65.4	1.4	4.9							
<b>M+I</b>	28.9	64.8	1.4	4.9							
<b>Inferred</b>	28.4	64.8	1.6	5.2							
<b>Waterberg Aggregate Total 2.0 g/t Cut-off September 2018 100% Project Basis</b>											
Mineral Resource	Cut-off	Tonnage	Grade						Metal		
	4E		Pt	Pd	Rh	Au	4E	Cu	Ni	4E	
	g/t	t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	%	%	kg	Moz
<b>Measured</b>	<b>2.0</b>	78 773 368	0.83	2.00	0.05	0.18	3.06	0.083	0.186	240 734	7.740
<b>Indicated</b>	<b>2.0</b>	296 269 985	0.83	1.86	0.04	0.19	2.92	0.082	0.174	866 393	27.855
<b>M+I</b>	<b>2.0</b>	<b>375 043 353</b>	<b>0.86</b>	<b>1.87</b>	<b>0.04</b>	<b>0.18</b>	<b>2.95</b>	<b>0.083</b>	<b>0.176</b>	<b>1 107 127</b>	<b>35.595</b>
<b>Inferred</b>	<b>2.0</b>	146 564 922	0.78	1.66	0.04	0.21	2.69	0.079	0.146	394 830	12.694
Resource Category	Prill Split										
	Pt	Pd	Rh	Au							
	%	%	%	%							
<b>Measured</b>	27.1	65.4	1.6	5.9							
<b>Indicated</b>	28.4	63.7	1.4	6.5							
<b>M+I</b>	29.1	63.4	1.4	6.1							
<b>Inferred</b>	29.0	61.7	1.5	7.8							
<p><i>4E = Platinum Group Elements (Pd+Pt+Rh) and Au. The cut-offs for Mineral Resources were established by a qualified person after a review of potential operating costs and other factors. The Mineral Resources stated above are shown on a 100% basis, that is, for the Waterberg Project entity. Conversion Factor used kg to oz = 32.15076. Numbers may not add due to rounding. A 5% and 7% geological loss were applied to the Measured/Indicated and Inferred Mineral Resource categories respectively.</i></p>											

Table 2: Summary of Mineral Resource effective September 27, 2018 on a 100% project basis at 2.5 g/t (4E) cut-off												
T Zone at 2.5 g/t (4E) cut-off												
Mineral Resource Category	Cut-off	Tonnage	Grade								Metal	
	4E		Pt	Pd	Rh	Au	4E	Cu	Ni	4E		
	g/t	t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	%	%	kg	Moz	
Measured	2.5	3 098 074	1.19	2.09	0.05	0.90	4.23	0.160	0.090	13 105	0.421	
Indicated	2.5	18 419 181	1.34	2.31	0.03	0.87	4.55	0.197	0.095	83 807	2.694	
M+I	2.5	21 517 255	1.32	2.28	0.03	0.88	4.51	0.192	0.094	96 912	3.116	
Inferred	2.5	21 829 698	1.15	1.92	0.03	0.76	3.86	0.198	0.098	84 263	2.709	
	Prill Split											
Resource Category	Pt	Pd	Rh	Au								
	%	%	%	%								
Measured	28.1	49.4	1.2	21.3								
Indicated	29.5	50.7	0.7	19.1								
M+I	29.3	50.5	0.7	19.5								
Inferred	29.8	49.7	0.8	19.7								
F Zone at 2.5 g/t (4E) cut-off												
Mineral Resource Category	Cut-off	Tonnage	Grade								Metal	
	4E		Pt	Pd	Rh	Au	4E	Cu	Ni	4E		
		g/t	t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	%	%	kg	Moz
Measured	2.5	54 072 600	0.95	2.20	0.05	0.16	3.36	0.087	0.202	181 704	5.842	
Indicated	2.5	166 895 635	0.95	2.09	0.05	0.15	3.24	0.090	0.186	540 691	17.384	
M+I	2.5	220 968 235	0.95	2.12	0.05	0.15	3.27	0.089	0.190	722 395	23.226	
Inferred	2.5	44 836 851	0.87	1.92	0.05	0.14	2.98	0.064	0.169	133 705	4.299	
	Prill Split											
Resource Category	Pt	Pd	Rh	Au								
	%	%	%	%								

<b>Measured</b>	28.3	65.4	1.5	4.8							
<b>Indicated</b>	29.3	64.4	1.6	4.7							
<b>M+I</b>	29.1	64.8	1.5	4.6							
<b>Inferred</b>	29.2	64.4	1.7	4.7							
<b>Waterberg Aggregate Total 2.5 g/t Cut-off</b>											
Mineral Resource Category	Cut-off	Tonnage	Grade						Metal		
	4E		Pt	Pd	Rh	Au	4E	Cu	Ni	4E	
	g/t		g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	g/t	%	%	kg	Moz
<b>Measured</b>	<b>2.5</b>	57 170 674	0.96	2.19	0.05	0.20	3.40	0.091	0.196	194 809	6.263
<b>Indicated</b>	<b>2.5</b>	185 314 816	0.99	2.11	0.05	0.22	3.37	0.100	0.177	624 498	20.078
<b>M+I</b>	<b>2.5</b>	<b>242 485 490</b>	<b>0.98</b>	<b>2.13</b>	<b>0.05</b>	<b>0.22</b>	<b>3.38</b>	<b>0.098</b>	<b>0.181</b>	<b>819 307</b>	<b>26.342</b>
<b>Inferred</b>	<b>2.5</b>	66 666 549	0.96	1.92	0.04	0.34	3.26	0.108	0.146	217 968	7.008
	<b>Prill Split</b>										
Resource Category	Pt	Pd	Rh	Au							
	%	%	%	%							
<b>Measured</b>	28.2	64.4	1.5	5.9							
<b>Indicated</b>	29.4	62.6	1.5	6.5							
<b>M+I</b>	29.2	63.0	1.4	6.4							
<b>Inferred</b>	29.5	58.9	1.2	10.4							
<p><i>4E = Platinum Group Elements (Pd+Pt+Rh) and Au. The cut-offs for Mineral Resources were established by a qualified person after a review of potential operating costs and other factors. The Mineral Resources stated above are shown on a 100% basis, that is, for the Waterberg Project entity. Conversion Factor used kg to oz = 32.15076. Numbers may not add due to rounding. A 5% and 7% geological loss were applied to the Measured/Indicated and Inferred Mineral Resource categories respectively.</i></p>											

**Notes:**

1. Mineral Resources are classified in accordance with the SAMREC (2016) standards. There are certain differences with the CIM Standards on Mineral Resources and Mineral Reserves ; however, in this case the Company and the QP believe the differences are not material and the standards may be considered the same. Inferred Mineral Resources have a high degree of uncertainty. Mineral Resources might never be upgraded or converted to Mineral Reserves.
2. Mineral Resources are provided on a 100% project basis. Inferred and Indicated categories are separate. The estimates have an effective date of September 27, 2018. Tables may not add perfectly due to rounding.
3. A cut-off grade of 2.0 g/t and 2.5 g/t 4E (platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold) is applied to the selected base case Mineral Resources.
4. Cut-off grade for the T Zone and the F Zone considered costs, smelter discounts, concentrator recoveries from the previous and ongoing engineering work completed on the property by the Company and its independent engineers. Spot and three year trailing average prices and exchange rates are considered for the cut-off considerations. The upper and lower bound metal prices used in the determination of cut-off grade for resources estimated are as follows: US\$983/oz-US\$953/oz Pt, US\$993/oz-US\$750/oz Pd, US\$1 325/oz- US\$1 231/oz Au, US\$1 923 US/oz-US\$972/oz Rh, US\$6.08/lb-US\$4.77/lb Ni, US\$3.08/lb-US\$2.54/lb Cu, US\$/ZAR15-US\$/ZAR12. These metal prices are based on the estimated 3 year trailing average prices and the spot prices at the time of commencement of the Mineral Resource estimate modelling. The lower cut-off was tested against the higher metal price in the range and the higher cut-off was tested against the lower price in the range.

The objective of the cut-off grade estimation was to establish a minimum grade for working break even. From the 2016 PFS the following factors were used for the calculation of Cut-off at 2.0 g/t (4E) at higher potential prices and 2.5 g/t 4E at more conservative lower prices listed above.

Working Cost Mining of US\$ 25.00, 379 Rand per Tonne, LOM Avg. Total Opex US\$ 38, 574  
Rand Avg. LOM

80 g/t Concentrate 82% recoveries of the PGMs, 88% of the Copper and 49% of the Nickel

85% Pay ability of the PGMs from a third-party smelter, 73% for Copper and 68% for Nickel

These costs recoveries and pay abilities are all to be updated in the DFS for the consideration of reserves and there can be no assurance that any of the Mineral Resources will be converted to Mineral Reserves. Metallurgical work indicates that an economically attractive concentrate can be produced from standard flotation methods.

5. Charles Muller of CJM Consulting completed the Mineral Resource Estimate and a NI 43-101 technical report for the Mineral Resources reported herein, effective September 27, 2018.
6. Mineral Resources were estimated using Ordinary and Simple Kriging methods in Datamine Studio3 from 437 mother holes and 585 deflections in mineralisation. A process of geological modelling and creation of grade shells using Indicating Kriging (IK) was completed in the estimation process.
- 7.

The estimation of Mineral Resources has considered environmental, permitting, legal, title, taxation, socio-economic, marketing and political factors. The Mineral Resources may be materially affected by metals prices, exchange rates, labour costs, electricity supply issues or many other factors detailed in the Company's Annual Information Form.

8. Estimated grades and quantities for by-products will be included in recoverable metals and estimates in the on-going Definitive Feasibility work. Copper and Nickel are the main value by-products recoverable by flotation and for Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources are estimated at 0.18% copper and 0.09% nickel in the T Zone and 0.08% copper and 0.18% nickel in the F Zone.
-

The data that formed the basis of the estimate are the drillholes drilled by Waterberg JV Resources which consist of geological logs, the drillhole collars, the downhole surveys and the assay data, all of which were validated by the QP. The area where each layer was present was delineated after examination of the intersections in the various drillholes.

There is no guarantee that all or any part of the Mineral Resource will be converted to a Mineral Reserve. The Prefeasibility study indicated a conversion rate of less than 50%.

### **Interpretation and Conclusions**

Exploration drilling by Waterberg JV Resources has intersected layered magmatic PGM mineralisation in what is interpreted to be the northern extension of the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex under the Waterberg Group rocks. This has confirmed the existence of mineralised zones with potentially economic concentrations of PGM s. Improved understanding of the geology allowed an improved Mineral Resource.

Additional infill drilling in the Indicated Mineral Resource category areas, resulted in portions of the Mineral Resources being upgraded to the Measured Mineral Resource category.

The Estimation was undertaken using best practices in terms of geostatistics.

The objectives in terms of adherence to the Scope of this Study were met in that an updated Mineral Resource model was produced. An objective of converting Indicated mineral resources from the previous estimates to the higher confidence of Measured was also completed. Cut-offs using previous estimates of costs and recoveries from the 2016 PFS were utilized for this resource estimate with updated price decks.

The delineation of the F Zone and T Zone units was advanced due to better understanding of the geology. The T Zone was divided into three distinct layers, TZ, T1 and T0.

The database used for this estimate consisted of 437 drillholes and 585 deflections. The mineralisation is considered open down-dip and along strike to the north.

The Waterberg Project represents one of the largest discoveries of PGE mineralisation in recent history. Metallurgical work completed to date at Mintek along with previously published Pre-Feasibility Study adds to the confidence in this discovery.

The Measured and Indicated Mineral Resources are at an appropriate level of confidence to be considered in the ongoing Definitive Feasibility Study for mine planning.

### **Recommendations**

It is recommended that the Mineral Resources Reported be considered in the ongoing Definitive Feasibility Study, ( DFS ) for the Waterberg Project. The Indicated and Measured Mineral Resources are of a confidence interval appropriate for mine planning and consideration in the DFS. Further work drilling work could be capable of converting the Inferred Mineral Resources to a higher category but at this time it is likely that future drilling may be focused on other areas and items like geotechnical characteristics for mine planning or detailed metallurgical work. A budget for the DFS is in progress so no specific budget is recommended here. Based on the Mineral Resource estimate here it is recommended that the DFS and ongoing Mining Right Application work continue.

---

\*\*\*\*\*

**Additional Information**

During the year ended August 31, 2018, approximately \$9.1 million was spent at the Waterberg Project for engineering and exploration activities. At August 31, 2018 the Company had capitalized \$29.4 million in accumulated net costs to the Waterberg Project. Total expenditures on the property since inception, and before cost reimbursements by other Waterberg Project Partners, are approximately \$62 million.

The DFS is now being advanced under the direction of the Technical Committee appointed by Waterberg JV Co., which is comprised of members representing the Company and all other Waterberg Project Partners Implats, JOGMEC and Mnombo.

Previously, an updated mineral resource estimate was completed by the Company for the Waterberg Project in October 2016 as a component NI 43-101 technical report to a pre-feasibility study. Since the October 2016 mineral resource estimate was completed, the joint venture, at the direction of its Technical Committee, completed a further 61,394 meters of drilling in 143 new drill holes targeting the T and the F Zones. An additional 125 deflections from the mother holes were also drilled. A total of approximately 26,000 new assay samples were completed along with 5,000 reference samples and quality control blanks.

The true width of the shallow dipping (30° to 35) mineralized zones at the Waterberg Project are approximately 82% to 87% of the reported interval from the vertical intercepts drilled. For the efficient application of bulk mining methods and for mine planning, vertical intercepts of 3 meters or more are desirable. Increased grade thickness zones associated with minor footwall troughs or bays along the 13 km long layered complex have recently been identified.

As a result of its shallow depth, good grade and a fully mechanized mining approach, the Waterberg Project has the opportunity to be a safe mine within the lowest quartile of the Southern Africa PGE industry cost curve.

Waterberg JV Co. has applied for a mining right and detailed consultation with communities, local municipalities, the Limpopo Provincial government and South African national authorities is ongoing. The application for a mining right has been accepted by the DMR for consideration. Consultation with stakeholders has been in a positive climate of mutual respect.

Important detailed infrastructure planning has commenced for the Waterberg Project. Detailed hydrological work is now underway to study the possible utilization of known sources for significant volumes of ground water. A recent co-operation agreement between Waterberg JV Co. and the local Capricorn Municipality for the development of water resources to the benefit of local communities and the mine is resulting in good advancement towards the identification of water supplies and the design of distribution infrastructure. Hydrological work so far has also identified several large-scale water basins that are likely able to provide mine process and potable water for the Waterberg Project and local communities. Test drilling of these water basins has commenced. An earlier, well executed work and drilling program conducted by the Capricorn District Municipality identified both potable and high mineral unpotable water resources in the district. Drilling by Waterberg JV Co. has identified some potable water resources. Several boreholes proximal to the Waterberg Project identified large volumes of high mineral unpotable water not suitable for agriculture. Hydrological and mill process specialists are investigating the use of this water as mine process water. In general, ground water resources identified proximal to the Waterberg Project have potential for usage for both mining and local communities.

---

The establishment of servitudes for power line routes and detailed planning and permitting for an Eskom electrical service to the project are also advancing well. Power line environmental and servitude work is being completed by TDxPower in coordination with Eskom. TDxPower has progressed electrical power connection planning for approximately a 70 km, 137MVA line to the project.

The joint venture partners target the completion of the DFS at the end of March, 2019. Planned DFS engineering work on the Waterberg Project includes resource modelling, metallurgical work, optimization of the metallurgical flow sheet using South African and Japanese expertise, bulk services design and mechanized mine planning. Optimization of the mine plan and working on reducing underground sustaining development capital will be part of the upcoming DFS. DRA Projects SA (Proprietary) Limited was appointed for DFS work on metallurgy, plant design, infrastructure and cost estimation. Stantec Consulting International LLC was appointed for DFS work on underground mining engineering and design and reserve estimation.

### **Non-Material Mineral Property Interests**

The non-material mineral property interests of the Company include prospecting rights located in South Africa and various mineral property interests in Canada. These non-material property interests are not, individually or collectively, material to the Company and are also described in the Company's Financial Statements and Management's Discussion and Analysis for the year ended August 31, 2018.

### **ITEM 4A. UNRESOLVED STAFF COMMENTS**

Not applicable.

### **ITEM 5. OPERATING AND FINANCIAL REVIEW AND PROSPECTS**

The following discussion of the Company's financial condition, changes in financial conditions and results of operations for each of the three years ended August 31, 2018 should be read in conjunction with our consolidated financial statements and related notes included therein included in this annual report at Item 18. the Company's consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB.

The following discussion contains forward-looking statements that involve inherent risks and uncertainties. Actual results may differ materially from those contained in such forward-looking statements. See cautionary statements in Forward-Looking Statements at the beginning of this document.

Unless otherwise stated, all financial variations in this item are given on a reported basis.

### **2018 Share Consolidation**

On November 20, 2018, the Company announced its intention to further consolidate the Company's Common Shares on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10), effective at 9:00 a.m. (New York time) on December 13, 2018. The purpose of the consolidation is to increase the Company's common share price to be in compliance with the NYSE American's low selling price requirement. See Introduction Share Consolidation.

---



As at the date of filing of this Annual Report, the 2018 Share Consolidation has not become effective. Unless otherwise indicated, all information included in this Item 5 and the Company's consolidated financial statements and related notes, including, without limitation, all share and per share amounts, trading and per share prices, note conversion rates and option and warrant exercise prices, is presented prior to giving effect to the 2018 Share Consolidation.

## A. Operating Results

### *Financial Overview*

#### Year Ended August 31, 2018 Compare to Year Ended August 31, 2017

For the year ended August 31, 2018, the Company had a net loss of \$41 million (August 31, 2017 net loss of \$590 million). This difference is predominantly due to an impairment of the Maseve Mine of \$589 million during the 2017 fiscal year. Other items include a foreign exchange loss of \$4.1 million (August 31, 2017 - \$4.6 million gain) due to the US Dollar increasing in value relative to the Company's functional currency of the Canadian Dollar. Interest expense of \$18.4 million and care and maintenance costs of \$14.4 million were recognized in the current year whereas these costs were capitalized in the previous year. Also, stock compensation expense of \$0.08 million was recognized in the current period (August 31, 2017 \$1.1 million) with the difference due to no share based compensation being issued in the current year. General and administrative costs rose from \$5.3 million to \$6.1 million due to an onerous lease accrual in the current year caused by the termination of lease agreements for mobile machinery utilized by Maseve. The currency translation adjustment recognized in the period is a gain of \$22.1 million (August 31, 2017 - \$59 million gain).

#### Year Ended August 31, 2017 Compared to Year Ended August 31, 2016

For the year ended August 31, 2017, the Company had a net loss of \$590 million (August 31, 2016 net loss of \$36.6 million). This difference is predominantly due to an impairment of the Maseve Mine of \$589 million during the year. Other items include a foreign exchange gain of \$4.6 million (August 31, 2016 - \$1.7 million gain) due to the US Dollar decreasing in value relative to the Company's functional currency of the Canadian Dollar. Also, stock compensation expense of \$1.1 million was recognized in the current period (August 31, 2016 \$0.1 million) with the difference due to more rapid vesting of share based compensation issued in the current year. General and administrative costs rose from \$5.4 to \$5.7 million due to increase professional fees. The currency translation adjustment recognized in the period is a gain of \$59 million (August 31, 2017 - \$50 million loss) due to an 9% increase in value of the Rand against the US Dollar in the current year as compared to an 11% decrease in the value of the Rand in the previous year.

### *Annual Financial Information*

*(In thousands of dollars, except for share data)*

	<b>Year ended Aug 31, 2018</b>	<b>Year ended Aug 31, 2017</b>	<b>Year ended Aug 31, 2016</b>
Interest income	\$ 739 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 1,062 <sup>(1)</sup>	\$ 1,133 <sup>(1)</sup>
Net loss	\$ 41,024 <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 590,317 <sup>(2)</sup>	\$ 36,651 <sup>(2)</sup>
Basic loss per share	\$ 0.20 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 4.30 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 0.26 <sup>(3)</sup>
Diluted loss per share	\$ 0.20 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 4.30 <sup>(3)</sup>	\$ 0.26 <sup>(3)</sup>
Total assets	\$ 41,849	\$ 100,528	\$ 519,858
Long term debt	\$ 42,291	\$ 43,821	\$ 54,586
Convertible Debt	\$ 14,853	\$ 17,225	Nil
Dividends	Nil	Nil	Nil



**Notes:**

- (1) the Company's only significant source of income during the years ending August 31, 2016 to 2018 was interest income from interest bearing accounts held by the Company.
- (2) Net loss is affected in 2016 and 2017 by an impairment recognized on the Maseve Mine and the impairment of the Maseve Mine when it was held as an asset held for sale.
- (3) Basic loss per share is calculated using the weighted average number of Common Shares outstanding. The Company uses the treasury stock method for the calculation of diluted earnings per share. Diluted per share amounts reflect the potential dilution that could occur if securities or other contracts to issue Common Shares were exercised or converted to Common Shares. In periods when a loss is incurred, the effect of potential issuances of shares under options and share purchase warrants would be anti-dilutive, and accordingly basic and diluted loss per share are the same. On January 26, 2016, the Company announced that effective January 28, 2016 its Common Shares would be consolidated on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10). All information regarding the issued and outstanding Common Shares, options and weighted average number and per share information has been retrospectively restated to reflect the 2016 ten to one consolidation.

Foreign currency fluctuations have not materially impacted the Company's results of operations in recent years. Inflation in South Africa has been experienced in labour costs over recent years, with average wage inflation being at approximately 6% in 2017 and 2018. The Company can provide no assurance that foreign currency fluctuations and inflation will not materially impact the Company in the future. See Risk Factors. The Company has not entered into any agreements or purchased any instruments to hedge possible currency risks at this time. Under IFRS, the Company defers all acquisition, exploration and development costs related to mineral properties. The recoverability of these amounts is dependent upon the existence of economically recoverable mineral reserves, the ability of the Company to obtain the necessary financing to complete the development of the property, and any future profitable production, or alternatively upon the Company's ability to dispose of its interests on an advantageous basis. The Company evaluates the carrying value of its property interests on a regular basis. Management is required to make significant judgements to identify potential impairment indicators. Any properties management deems to be impaired are written down to their estimated net recoverable amount.

*Events subsequent to the year ended August 31, 2018*

On November 20, 2018, the Company announced its intention to further consolidate the Company's Common Shares on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10), effective at 9:00 a.m. (New York time) on December 13, 2018. See Introduction Share Consolidation.

On October 25, 2018, the Company reported an updated independent 4E resource estimate for the Waterberg Project. For more details about the October 2018 Waterberg Report see Item 4.D. Property, Plant and Equipment Technical Report Waterberg.

On October 10, 2018 the Company announced that a recently filed mining right application for the Waterberg Project had been accepted by the DMR for consideration. The mining right application consisted of a mining work program, social and labour plan and associated environmental applications. The mining right application was supported by the Company and all of the Waterberg joint venture partners including Implats, JOGMEC and Mnombo. The process of consultation under the MPRDA and applicable environmental assessment regulations for the mining right application has commenced.

---

On September 20, 2018 the Company reported the receipt of a summons issued by Africa Wide commencing legal proceedings in South Africa against PTM RSA, RBPlat and Maseve in relation to the Maseve Transaction. Africa Wide is seeking, at this very late date, to set aside or be paid increased value for, the closed Maseve Transaction. Africa Wide held a 17.1% interest in Maseve prior to the Maseve Transaction. RBPlat consulted with senior counsel, both during the negotiation of the Maseve Transaction and in regard to the current Africa Wide legal proceedings. The Company has also received legal advice to the effect that the Africa Wide action, as issued, is ill-conceived and is factually and legally defective.

### ***South African Properties***

The Company conducts its South African exploration and development work through its wholly-owned direct subsidiary PTM RSA. The Company's material mineral property is the Waterberg Project. After a planned corporatization of the Waterberg joint venture completed on September 21, 2017, the Waterberg Project is held by Waterberg JV Co. After giving effect to the Initial Purchase, the Company holds a 50.02% beneficial interest in Waterberg JV Co., of which 37.05% is held directly by PTM RSA and 12.974% is held indirectly through PTM RSA's 49.9% interest in Mnombo, which holds 26.0% of Waterberg JV Co. The remaining interests in Waterberg JV Co. are held by a nominee of JOGMEC (21.95%) and by Implats (15.0%). PTM RSA is the manager of Waterberg JV Co.

### ***South African Legislation and Mining Charter***

The MPRDA, the Mining Charter 2018 and related regulations in South Africa require that BEE shareholders own a 26% equity interest in Waterberg JV Co. to qualify for the grant of a Mining Right. Within 5 years of the effective date of the Mining Right, this BEE shareholding must be increased to 30%. The DMR had obtained an exemption from applying the Generic BEE Codes under the BEE Act until October 31, 2016 and had applied for a further extension until December 31, 2016. While this exemption was extended to December 31, 2016, no further exemption was obtained thereafter, and, as a matter of law, the Generic BEE Codes now apply to the issuance and maintenance of licenses and other authorizations. As a matter of practice, the DMR has continued to apply the provisions of Mining Charter 2018 rather than the Generic BEE Codes. See Item 4.B. ***South African Regulatory Framework - Black Economic Empowerment in the South African Mining Industry, and Mining Charter.***

### **Material Mineral Property Interests Waterberg Project**

#### ***Waterberg Project Activities subsequent to the year ended August 31, 2018***

On October 25, 2018 the Company announced positive results from additional drilling and an updated mineral resource assessment on the Waterberg Project, effective September 27, 2018, resulting in increased confidence in the estimated mineral resources for the project, with 6.26 million 4E ounces now recognized in the higher confidence measured category. Mineral resources estimated in the combined measured and indicated categories, at a 2.5 g/t 4E cut-off grade, increased by 1.46 million 4E ounces to 26.34 million 4E ounces. Inferred mineral resources at a 2.5 g/t 4E cut-off grade totaled 7.0 million 4E ounces. The updated measured and indicated mineral resource totaling 26.34 million 4E ounces is comprised of 63.04% palladium, 29.16% platinum, 6.37% gold and 1.43% rhodium (242.5 million tonnes at 3.38 g/t 4E, versus 218.3 million tonnes grading 3.55 g/t 4E Indicated in the 2016 PFS). The T zone measured and indicated resources increased in grade from 3.88 g/t 4E in the 2016 PFS to 4.51 g/t 4E in 2018. For more details about the October 2018 Waterberg Report see Item 4.D. Property, Plant and Equipment Technical Report Waterberg.

---

The new increased confidence level 2018 resources are being used for detailed mine planning in the ongoing DFS. The DFS is being managed by Platinum Group and a Technical Committee including members from all joint venture partners.

On October 10, 2018 the Company announced that a recently filed mining right application for the Waterberg Project had been accepted by the DMR for consideration. The mining right application consisted of a mining work program, social and labour plan and associated environmental applications. The mining right application was supported by the Company and all of the Waterberg joint venture partners including Implats, JOGMEC and Mnombo. The process of consultation under the MPRDA and applicable environmental assessment regulations for the mining right application has commenced.

***Waterberg Project Activities in the year ended August 31, 2018***

During the year ended August 31, 2018, approximately \$9.1 million was spent at the Waterberg Project for engineering and exploration activities. At year end, \$29.4 million in accumulated net costs had been capitalized to the Waterberg Project. Total expenditures on the property since inception are approximately \$62 million. From inception to date, the Company has funded both the Company's and Mnombo's share of expenditures on the Waterberg Project. At August 31, 2018, Mnombo owed the Company approximately \$3.4 million for funding provided.

At August 31, 2018, the Company carried total net deferred acquisition and exploration and other costs related to the Waterberg Projects of \$29.4 million (August 31, 2017 - \$22.9 million).

On November 6, 2017, the Company, along with Waterberg JV Co., JOGMEC and Mnombo completed the first phase of the Implats Transaction. For more detail about the Implats Transaction see Item 4.A. Recent Developments November 2017 Implats Transaction

Detailed DFS engineering work which commenced during fiscal 2017 was continued and advanced during fiscal 2018.

***Waterberg Project Activities in the year ended August 31, 2017***

During the year ended August 31, 2017, approximately \$5.6 million was spent at the Waterberg Project for engineering and exploration activities. At August 31, 2017, the Company carried total net deferred acquisition and exploration and other costs related to the Waterberg Projects of \$22.9 million (August 31, 2016 - \$22.3 million). Since March 31, 2015, the budget for work at the Waterberg Project has been fully funded by joint venture partner JOGMEC in accordance with the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment to the JOGMEC Agreement (both as defined below). From inception to date the Company has funded both the Company's and Mnombo's share of expenditures on the Waterberg Project. At August 31, 2017, Mnombo owed the Company approximately \$1.9 million for funding provided.

At August 31, 2017, the Company carried total net deferred acquisition and exploration and other costs related to the Waterberg Projects of \$22.9 million (August 31, 2016 - \$22.3 million).

---

On October 19, 2016, the Company announced positive results from the 2016 PFS on the Waterberg Project completed by international and South African engineering firm WorleyParsons RSA (Pty) Ltd. trading as Advisian. An NI 43 101 technical report was filed entitled Independent Technical Report on the Waterberg Project Including Mineral Resource Update and Pre-Feasibility Study dated October 19, 2016, with an effective date of October 17, 2016 for the estimate of mineral reserves and resources (the **October 2016 Waterberg Report**), prepared by (i) Independent Engineering Qualified Person Mr. Robert L Goosen, B.Eng. (Mining, Engineering), Pr. Eng. (ECSA), Advisian/WorleyParsons Group; (ii) Independent Geological Qualified Person Mr. Charles J Muller, B.Sc. (Hons) Geology, Pri. Sci. Nat., CJM Consulting (Pty) Ltd.; and (iii) Independent Engineering Qualified Person Mr. Gordon I. Cunningham, B. Eng. (Chemical), Pr. Eng. (ECSA), Professional association to FSAIMM, Turnberry Projects (Pty) Ltd.

The October 2016 Waterberg Report included an updated estimate of mineral resources and recommended the project advance to the DFS stage for a large scale, shallow, decline accessible, mechanized platinum, palladium, rhodium and gold mine.

#### ***Waterberg Project Activities in the year ended August 31, 2016***

During the year ended August 31, 2016, approximately \$4.6 million was spent conducting drilling at the Waterberg Project. At times, up to twelve drill rigs were active on site. In addition to drilling approximately \$2.6 million was spent during the period for prefeasibility engineering, resource modelling, metallurgy, infrastructure design, etc. On April 19, 2016, the Company reported an updated independent 4E resource estimate for the Waterberg Project.

At August 31, 2016, the Company carried total net deferred acquisition and exploration and other costs related to the Waterberg Projects of \$20.2 million (August 31, 2015 - \$22.3 million). Since March 31, 2015 all Waterberg Project funding was covered by JOGMEC in accordance with the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment to the JOGMEC Agreement.

At period end \$20.2 million in net costs were capitalized to the project. The apparent drop from the USD capitalized balance at the previous year end was due entirely to the devaluation of the Rand and the translation of Rand denominated balances at year end. The budget for work at Waterberg in fiscal 2016 was fully funded by joint venture partner JOGMEC. To March 31, 2015, the Company funded the Company's and Mnombo's combined 63% share of the work on the Waterberg Project with the remaining 37% funded by JOGMEC. To March 31, 2015, the Company funded the Company's and Mnombo's combined 100% share of the work on the Waterberg Extension Project. Exploration work on the Waterberg Extension Project began in a material way in late 2013.

#### ***Waterberg Project October 2018 Waterberg Report***

On October 25, 2018, the Company reported an updated independent 4E resource estimate for the Waterberg Project. These results, based on a drilling program completed in 2018, confirmed increased confidence in the Waterberg Project with 6.26 million 4E ounces recognized in the higher confidence measured category. Mineral resources estimated in the combined measured and indicated categories have increased by 1.46 million 4E ounces to 26.34 million 4E ounces. Inferred mineral Resources are estimated at 7.0 million 4E ounces. The aggregate T Zone and F Zone measured and indicated resource is comprised of 63% palladium, 29% platinum, 6% gold and 1% rhodium (242.5 Million Tonnes at 3.38 g/t 4E). The T Zone measured and indicated mineral resources have increased in grade from 3.88g/t 4E as estimated for the 2016 PFS to 4.51 g/t 4E in 2018. All of the preceding was estimated at a 2.5 g/t 4E (palladium, platinum, rhodium and gold) cut-off grade.

---

On November 16, 2018 Platinum Group filed a National Instrument 43-101 technical report on the above updated mineral resources entitled Technical Report On The Mineral Resource Update For The Waterberg Project Located In The Bushveld Igneous Complex, South Africa (defined above as the **October 2018 Waterberg Report**). In addition, a SAMREC 2016 compliant Mineral Resource statement has been prepared and signed-off by the Independent Geological Qualified Person. The Independent Geological Qualified Person for the October 2018 Waterberg Report and the companion SAMREC Mineral Resource statement is Mr. Charles J Muller, (B.Sc. (Hons) Geology) Pr. Sci. Nat. (Reg. No. 400201/04), CJM Consulting (Pty) Ltd.

Technical information referenced within this Annual report is sourced from the October 2018 Waterberg Report. For more details about the October 2018 Waterberg Report see Item 4.D. Property, Plant and Equipment Technical Report Waterberg.

### ***Waterberg Projects History of Acquisition***

The Waterberg Joint Venture Project was comprised of a contiguous granted prospecting right area of approximately 255 km<sup>2</sup> located on the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex, approximately 70 km north of the town of Mokopane (formerly Potgietersrus). The adjacent Waterberg Extension Project included contiguous granted and applied-for prospecting rights with a combined area of approximately 864 km<sup>2</sup>. Prospecting rights are valid for a period of five years, with one renewal of up to three years. Furthermore, the MPRDA provides for a retention period after prospecting of up to three years with one renewal of up to two years, subject to certain conditions. The holder of a prospecting right granted under the MPRDA has the exclusive right to apply for and, subject to compliance with the requirements of the MPRDA, to be granted, a mining right in respect of the prospecting area in question.

On September 28, 2009, PTM RSA, JOGMEC and Mnombo entered into a joint venture agreement, as later amended on May 20, 2013 (the **JOGMEC Agreement**) whereby JOGMEC could earn up to a 37% participating interest in the Waterberg Joint Venture Project for an optional work commitment of \$3.2 million over four years, while at the same time Mnombo could earn a 26% participating interest in exchange for matching JOGMEC's expenditures on a 26/74 basis (\$1.12 million).

On November 7, 2011, the Company entered into an agreement with Mnombo whereby the Company acquired 49.9% of the issued and outstanding shares of Mnombo in exchange for cash payments totaling R1.2 million and an agreement that the Company would pay for Mnombo's 26% share of costs on the Waterberg Joint Venture Project until the completion of a DFS.

On May 26, 2015, the Company announced a second amendment to the JOGMEC Agreement (the **2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment**) whereby the Waterberg Joint Venture Project and the Waterberg Extension Project were to be consolidated and contributed into operating company, Waterberg JV Co. At August 31, 2017, the Company held 45.65% of the Waterberg Project while JOGMEC held 28.35% and Mnombo held 26%. Through its 49.9% share of Mnombo, the Company held an effective 58.62% of the Waterberg Project, at August 31, 2017. The transfer of Waterberg prospecting rights into Waterberg JV Co. pursuant to the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment was given section 11 approval by the DMR in August, 2017 and the transfer was completed on September 21, 2017. Under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment, JOGMEC committed to fund \$20 million in expenditures over a three-year period ending March 31, 2018, all of which had been funded by JOGMEC as of August 31, 2017 with \$3.1 million still left to be spent. The Company remained the Project operator under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment.

On November 6, 2017, the Company (along with JOGMEC and Mnombo) closed the Initial Purchase with Implats and Implats acquired the Purchase and Development Option. Further details on this transaction can be found above.

---

On March 8, 2018, JOGMEC announced that it had signed a memorandum of understanding for the transfer of 9.755% of its 21.95% interest in Waterberg JV Co. to Hanwa, which was the result of Hanwa winning JOGMEC's public tender held on February 23, 2018. JOGMEC and Hanwa have completed negotiations on the terms of the transfer of interest to Hanwa, including, with a successful implementation, Hanwa securing the right to a supply of certain metals produced at the Waterberg Project.

As of the date of filing of this Annual Report, Waterberg JV Co. owns 100% of the prospecting rights comprising the entire Waterberg Project area. Waterberg JV Co. is owned 37.05% by PTM RSA, 21.95% by JOGMEC, 26% by Mnombo and 15% by Implats, giving the Company total direct and indirect ownership of 50.02% of the Waterberg Project.

### ***Non-Material Mineral Property Interests***

The non-material mineral property interests of the Company include the War Springs and Tweespalk projects located in South Africa and various Canadian mineral property interests. These non-material property interests are not, individually or collectively, material to the Company. All non-material properties have been written off.

### ***Maseve Sale to Royal Bafokeng Platinum***

On September 6, 2017, the Company entered into a term sheet to sell all rights and interests in Maseve to RBPlat in a transaction valued at approximately \$74.0 million, payable as \$62.0 million in cash and \$12.0 million in RBPlat ordinary shares.

Definitive legal agreements for the Maseve Sale Transaction were executed on November 23, 2017. A deposit in escrow was paid by RBPlat in the amount of Rand 4,871,335 (\$3.0 million equivalent) on October 9, 2017. The Maseve Sale Transaction occurred in two stages:

Pursuant to the terms of the stage one Plant Sale Transaction, on April 5, 2018, RBPlat completed payments to Maseve for the Rand equivalent of \$58 million to acquire the concentrator plant and certain surface assets of the Maseve Mine, including an appropriate allocation for power and water. Proceeds from the Plant Sale Transaction received by Maseve on April 5, 2018 were remitted to the Company's South African subsidiary, PTM RSA, in partial settlement of loans due to PTM RSA, and then remitted by PTM RSA on April 10, 2018 to repay the Sprott Facility (as defined below) in full and to partially repay the LMM Facility. After completion of Plant Sale Transaction on April 5, 2018, Maseve retained ownership of the mining right, underground development and equipment, power and water rights as well as certain surface rights and improvements in respect of the Maseve Mine.

Pursuant to the stage two Share Transaction, on April 26, 2018, RBPlat released 4.87 million RBPlat Common Shares from escrow to PTM RSA and Africa Wide, worth approximately \$9.0 million at that time. The required cash payment was made to PTM RSA on May 29, 2018, funded by the release of Maseve's Rand 58 million environmental bond, valued at \$4.6 million on May 29, 2018. The Company's 4.52 million RBPlat ordinary shares received were all held in a broker account at May 31, 2018, pending future disposition and payment of proceeds to LMM.



Conditions precedent to the Plant Sale Transaction were fulfilled on February 14, 2018. A deposit amount in escrow of Rand 41.37 million (approximately \$3.5 million) (the Deposit) was released to the Company on March 14, 2018. An amount of Rand 1.29 million (\$107,755) from the release of the Deposit was paid to reduce outstanding indebtedness to the Sprott Lenders and the balance was used to settle certain outstanding contractor claims in South Africa.

The final Plant Sale Transaction cash payment of Rand 646.74 million (the Final Payment) was received by the Company in South Africa coincident with the registration of the applicable surface rights to a wholly owned subsidiary of RBPlat on April 5, 2018. The Rand amount received was the product of \$58 million at a quoted USD to Rand exchange rate of 11.92 on April 5, 2018 less the Deposit amount in Rand. Upon receipt of Rand Proceeds of 646.74 million in Canada on April 9, 2018 the Final Payment was exchanged from Rand into \$53.3 million at a rate of 12.1341. Later, on April 10, 2018 the Company received a foreign exchange rate variance amount of Rand 3.26 million from RBPlat (the FX Amount), which was exchanged for \$270,000 and remitted to LMM.

In summary, the Company utilized approximately \$46.98 million from the Final Payment to repay all remaining indebtedness under the Sprott Facility, consisting of the outstanding principal amount of \$40.0 million, the Bridge Loan of \$5.0 million and all accrued and unpaid interest and fees due of approximately \$1.98 million. The Company then paid approximately \$6.32 million from the Final Payment and the \$270,000 foreign exchange amount against the LMM Facility. From stage two proceeds a further \$4.6 million was paid against the LMM Facility. Future proceeds from the planned sale of the Company's RBPlat ordinary shares received in stage two will also be forwarded as a repayment against the LMM Facility.

#### **B. Liquidity and Capital Resources**

The Company's working capital is a direct result of the excess of funds raised from debt, the sale of equity shares and the receipt of payments for sale of PGE concentrate over expenditures for operating costs, engineering costs, exploration costs as well as administrative expenses. The working capital balance at the end of the following periods were: August 31, 2018: \$8 million; August 31, 2017: \$13 million; August 31, 2016: \$21 million.

Cash and cash equivalents at August 31, 2018 totaled \$3.0 million compared to August 31, 2017 \$3.4 million and \$16.4 million at August 31, 2016. The cash and cash equivalents are attributable primarily to the issue of debt or share capital. Aside from cash and cash equivalents, the Company had no material unused sources of liquid assets at August 31, 2018, 2017 or 2016.

As described elsewhere in this Annual Report, various legal, contractual or economic restrictions may affect the ability of the Company's subsidiaries to transfer funds to the Company as needed to satisfy the Company's obligations.

For information on the Company's borrowings as of August 31, 2018, see Item 18 Financial Statements, Note 7.

Except in the case of JOGMEC's \$20 million funding commitment, which has now been fully funded, and the potential for the receipt of funding if Implats exercises its Purchase and Development Option, the exercise of which is not guaranteed and is not expected to occur prior to the completion of the DFS, funding of Waterberg Project costs is generally required to be provided by Waterberg JV Co. shareholders on a pro rata basis. Item 4.A. Recent Developments November 2017 Implats Transaction. For anticipated Waterberg Project capital expenditures, see Item 4.D. Material Mineral Property Interests Waterberg Project Summary (Excerpted from the October 2016 Waterberg Report).

---

***Going Concern***

During the year the Company announced and completed the sale of the Maseve Mine for initial gross proceeds of \$74 million. Stage one of the Maseve Sale Transaction was closed on April 5, 2018, with stage two closing April 26, 2018. Also during the period, Implats completed the strategic acquisition of an 8.6% interest in Waterberg JV Co. from the Company for \$17.2 million and the Company completed the sale of 132 million units resulting in gross proceeds of \$19.9 million. As a result of these transactions, the Sprott facility has been completely paid down and the LMM repayment schedule has been crystalized. The Company currently has limited financial resources and has no sources of operating income at present. the Company's ability to continue operations in the normal course of business will therefore depend upon its ability to secure additional funding by methods that could include debt refinancing, equity financing, sale of assets and strategic partnerships. Management believes the Company will be able to secure further funding as required. Nonetheless, there exist material uncertainties resulting in substantial doubt as to the ability of the Company to continue to meet its obligations as they come due and hence, the ultimate appropriateness of the use of accounting principles applicable to a going concern.

***Equity Financings***

On May 26, 2016, the Company announced the closing of the May 2016 Offering for 11,000,000 Common Shares at a price of \$3.00 per share resulting in gross proceeds of \$33 million. Net proceeds to the Company after fees, commissions and costs were approximately \$30 million.

On November 1, 2016, the Company announced the closing of the November 2016 Offering for 22,230,000 Common Shares at a price of \$1.80 per share resulting in gross proceeds of \$40 million. Net proceeds to the Company after fees, commissions and costs were approximately \$37 million.

On January 31, 2017, the Company announced the closing of the January 2017 Offering for 19,693,750 Common Shares at a price of \$1.46 per share resulting in gross proceeds of \$29 million. Net proceeds to the Company after fees, commissions and costs were approximately \$26 million.

On April 26, 2017, the Company announced the closing of the April 2017 Offering for 15,390,000 Common Shares at a price of \$1.30 per share, for aggregate gross proceeds of \$20 million. Net proceeds to the Company after fees, commissions and costs were approximately \$18.4 million.

On May 15, 2018, the Company announced the closing of a private placement with HCI for 15,090,999 units at a price of \$0.15 per unit for aggregate gross proceeds of \$2.26 million. Each unit consisted of one common share and one common share purchase warrant, with each common share purchase warrant allowing HCI to purchase one further common share of the Company at a price of US\$0.17 per share for a period of 18 months until November 15, 2018.

On May 15, 2018, the Company also announced the closing of a public offering of 117,453,862 units at a price of \$0.15 per unit for aggregate gross proceeds of approximately \$17.62 million. Each unit consisted of one common share and one common share purchase warrant entitling the holder to purchase one common share at a price of \$0.17 for a term of 18 months until November 15, 2018.

The following is a reconciliation for the use of proceeds from the financings described above:

---

<b>Use of Proceeds (In millions of dollars)</b>	<b>Project 1 underground development and production rampup costs(100% basis) (\$)</b>	<b>Working capital during start-up<sup>(1)</sup> (\$)</b>	<b>Repayment of Second Advance<sup>(2)</sup> (\$)</b>	<b>Repayment towards the LMM Facility (\$)</b>	<b>General corporate purposes (\$)</b>	<b>Total (\$)</b>
As Estimated in the October 25, 2016 Prospectus Supplement	22.00	9.40	5.00	-	0.56	36.96
As Estimated in the January 24, 2017 Prospectus Supplement	8.50	4.00	-	-	13.88 <sup>(3)</sup>	26.38
As Estimated in the April 19, 2017 Prospectus Supplement	11.70	3.50	2.50	-	0.66	18.36
As Estimated in the May 15, 2018 Private Placement	-	-	-	1.06	1.06	2.12
As Estimated in the May 15, 2018 Prospectus Supplement	-	-	-	10.94	4.48	15.42
Aggregate Amount	42.2	16.9	7.5	12.0	20.64	99.24
Actual to August 31, 2018	82.43	8.15	5.0	12.0	2.52	96.22

**Notes:**

- (1) May be used for interest payable under the Sprott Facility, wages and salaries and other estimated general and administrative costs.
- (2) The proceeds from the Second Advance were used to fund underground development and production ramp-up at Project 1. The Sprott Lenders elected for earlier repayment of one half of the Second Advance from the proceeds of the November 1, 2016 offering. The balance of the Second Advance was repaid from the net proceeds of the April 26, 2017 offering.
- (3) Includes \$10.35 million estimated in the January 24, 2017 Prospectus Supplement and the balance of net proceeds from the offering represented by the over-allotment option, which was exercised in full.

**Convertible Senior Subordinated Notes**

On June 30, 2017, the Company issued and sold to certain institutional investors \$20 million aggregate principal amount of 6 7/8% convertible senior subordinated notes due 2022 (the **Notes**). The Notes bear interest at a rate of 6 7/8% per annum, payable semi-annually on January 1 and July 1 of each year, beginning on January 1, 2018, in cash or at the election of the Company, in Common Shares of the Company or a combination of cash and Common Shares, and will mature on July 1, 2022, unless earlier repurchased, redeemed or converted.

Subject to certain exceptions, the Notes are convertible at any time at the option of the holder, and may be settled, at the Company's election, in cash, Common Shares, or a combination of cash and Common Shares. If any Notes are converted on or prior to the three and one-half year anniversary of the issuance date, the holder of the Notes will also be entitled to receive an amount equal to the remaining interest payments on the converted Notes to the three and one-half year anniversary of the issuance date, discounted by 2%, payable in Common Shares. The initial conversion rate of the Notes is 1,001.1112 Common Shares per \$1,000 principal amount of Notes, which is equivalent to an initial conversion price of approximately \$0.9989 per common share, representing a conversion premium of approximately 15% above the NYSE American closing sale price for the Company's Common Shares of \$0.8686 per share on June 27, 2017. The conversion rate will be subject to adjustment upon the occurrence of certain events. If the Company pays interest in Common Shares, such shares will be issued at a price equal to 92.5% of the simple average of the daily volume-weighted average price of the Common Shares for the 10 consecutive trading days ending on the second trading day immediately preceding the payment date, on the NYSE American exchange or, if the Common Shares are not then listed on the NYSE American exchange, on the principal U.S. national or other securities exchange or market on which the Common Shares are then listed or admitted for trading.

Notwithstanding the foregoing, no holder will be entitled to receive Common Shares upon conversion of Notes to the extent that such receipt would cause the converting holder or persons acting as a "group" to become, directly or indirectly, a "beneficial owner" (as defined in the indenture governing the Notes, dated June 30, 2017 between the Company and The Bank of New York Mellon (the "**Indenture**")) of more than 19.9% of the Common Shares outstanding at such time or, in the case of a certain note holder, if it or its affiliates would become a "beneficial owner" of more than 4.9% of the Common Shares outstanding at such time. In addition, the Company will not issue an aggregate number of Common Shares pursuant to the Notes that exceeds 19.9% of the total number of Common Shares outstanding on June 30, 2017.

Prior to July 1, 2018, the Company may not redeem the Notes, except upon the occurrence of certain changes to the laws governing Canadian withholding taxes. On or after July 1, 2018 and before July 1, 2019, the Company shall have the right to redeem all or part of the Notes at a price, payable in cash, of 110.3125% of the principal amount of the Notes to be redeemed, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to, but excluding, the redemption date; on or after July 1, 2019 and before July 1, 2020, the Company shall have the right to redeem all or part of the outstanding Notes at a price, payable in cash, of 105.15625% of the principal amount of the Notes to be redeemed, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to but excluding, the redemption date; and on or after July 1, 2010, until the maturity date, the Company shall have the right to redeem all or part of the outstanding Notes at a price, payable in cash, of 100% of the principal amount of the Notes to be redeemed, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any, to, but excluding, the redemption date.

Upon the occurrence of a fundamental change as defined in the Indenture, the Company must offer to purchase the outstanding Notes at a price, payable in cash, equal to 100% of the principal amount of the Notes, plus accrued and unpaid interest, if any.

The Company agreed in the Indenture to cause a prospectus and a registration statement to be filed with Canadian securities regulatory authorities and with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission, as applicable, and become usable and effective within six months after June 30, 2017, and to remain usable and effective for certain periods. The Indenture provides that if the Company does not do so, it shall pay additional interest on the Notes at a rate of 0.25% per annum for the first 90 days and at a rate of 0.50% per annum thereafter, until the Notes are freely tradable by holders other than affiliates and certain other events have occurred. The Company does not anticipate filing the prospectus and registration statement and, accordingly, anticipates paying additional interest as provided for in the Indenture.

The Notes will be unsecured senior subordinated obligations and will be subordinated in right of payment to the prior payment in full of all of the Company's existing and future senior indebtedness pursuant to the Indenture. The Company may issue additional Notes in accordance with the terms and conditions set forth in the Indenture. The Indenture contains certain additional covenants, including covenants restricting asset dispositions, issuances of capital stock by subsidiaries, incurrence of indebtedness, business combinations and share exchanges.

### *Sprott Facility*

On February 13, 2015, the Company announced it had entered into a credit agreement with the Sprott Lenders led by Sprott for the Sprott Facility of \$40 million. The Sprott Facility was drawn on November 20, 2015. During the year, a third advance of \$5 million was made to the Company, then repaid by the Company then a fourth advance of \$5 million was also made to the Company. All fees directly attributable to the Sprott loan were capitalized against the loan balance over the life of the loan and amortized using the effective interest method. The Sprott Facility was amended, or amended and restated, on November 19, 2015, May 3, 2016, September 19, 2016, October 11, 2016, January 13, 2017, April 13, 2017, June 13, 2017, September 25, 2017, December 21, 2017, February 12, 2018 and March 8, 2018. All advances, interest owing and principal amounts owing to Sprott were repaid during the current period (\$47.1 million) and at August 31, 2018 the Sprott Facility had no further payments due.

### *LMM Facility*

On November 20, 2015, the Company also drew down \$40 million from the LMM Facility, pursuant to the LMM credit agreement entered into on November 2, 2015, which was later amended, or amended and restated, as applicable on May 3, 2016, September 19, 2016, January 13, 2017, April 13, 2017, June 13, 2017, June 23, 2017, October 30, 2017, May 1, 2018, May 11, 2018, August 21, 2018 and October 18, 2018 with LMM.

The interest rate on the LMM Facility is LIBOR plus 9.5%. During the year the Company forwarded to Liberty payments totalling \$23.1 million. These payments completely paid down the production payment termination accrual of \$15 million and the production payments owing of \$0.4 million under the Production Payment Agreement with LMM (the **PPA**), and the PPA is now terminated. The remaining \$7.7 million was then applied against the loan and accrued interest owing. At August 31, 2018 the Company owed Liberty \$46.5 million. No further payments are due on the Liberty facility until October 31, 2019 and certain covenants relating to cash balances, working capital and cash sweeps have been waived until January 31, 2019.

### *Current Terms of the Liberty Loan*

There have been a number of modifications to the LMM Facility. At August 31, 2018, only the loan facility remains to be repaid. On May 11, 2018 the Company announced the following loan amendments whereby the Company must:

Raise a minimum of US\$15 million in financings of subordinated debt, Common Shares and/or securities convertible into Common Shares (the **Required Financing**) before May 31, 2018. This was satisfied with by the completion of both a private placement and a public offering of Common Shares on May 15, 2018 for combined gross proceeds of US\$19.88 million.

---

Apply the first US\$12 million of gross proceeds from the Required Financing to reduce indebtedness under the LMM Facility before May 31, 2018. This was satisfied with proceeds from the May 15, 2018 unit financing

Not otherwise be in default under the LMM Facility. The Company was not in default of any covenants on the LMM Facility at August 31, 2018. LMM has a first priority lien on: (i) the issued shares of PTM RSA held by the Company (and such other claims and rights described in the applicable pledge agreement); (ii) all present and after-acquired personal property of the Company; and (iii) the shares held by PTM RSA in Waterberg JV Co. The LMM Facility is also guaranteed by PTM RSA.

On August 21, 2018 the LMM Facility was modified to allow the Company until December 14, 2018 to sell its holdings of RBPlat Common Shares and apply the net proceeds to reduce indebtedness under the LMM Facility. The Company may or may not request a further extension of this sale requirement from LMM.

On October 18, 2018 the LMM Facility was modified provide a waiver allowing the Company to complete an equity financing of up to \$6.0 million by way of a private placement issuance before November 30, 2018, without LMM exercising its right to receive and apply 50% of the net proceeds of such offering to reduce indebtedness under the LMM Facility. Later, on November 28, 2018 this waiver was extended to December 31, 2018 and was also amended so that the allowable equity financing limit of up to \$6.0 million as described above could include the exercise of Private Placement Warrants and Offering Warrants .

#### ***Accounts Receivable and Payable***

Accounts receivable at August 31, 2018, totaled \$0.9 million (August 31, 2017 - \$2.1 million) being comprised mainly of South African value added taxes refundable receivable in the current period. Accounts payable and accrued liabilities at August 31, 2018, totaled \$2.9 million (\$16.4 million at August 31, 2017) the majority of the previous year's payables being related to care and maintenance costs at the Maseve mine.

Accounts receivable at August 31, 2017, totaled \$2.1 million (August 31, 2016 - \$6.1 million) being comprised mainly of pre-production proceeds of \$1.6 million in the current period (\$2.8 million at August 31, 2016) and value added taxes refundable in South Africa of \$2.6 million (\$1.8 million at August 31, 2016). Accounts payable and accrued liabilities at August 31, 2017, totaled \$16.4 million (\$16.9 million at August 31, 2016).

#### **C. Research and Development, Patents and Licences, etc.**

We do not engage in research and development activities.

#### **D. Trend Information**

the Company's key business objective is to advance the Waterberg Project to completion of a DFS and a construction decision. Under the terms of the Implats Transaction a DFS budget of \$10.0 million has been established by Waterberg JV Co. and the Company has set aside an amount of \$5.0 million from its proceeds of the Initial Purchase toward its share of DFS costs. Drilling to increase the confidence in certain areas of the known mineral resource to the measured category is underway. Engagement with utilities for the delivery of bulk services is in process. Engineering work on the Waterberg Project includes resource modelling, metallurgical work, optimization of the metallurgical flow sheet using South African and Japanese expertise, bulk services design and mechanized mine planning. Optimization of the mine plan and working on reducing underground sustaining development capital will be part of the upcoming DFS.

---

On October 10, 2018 the Company announced that a recently filed mining right application for the Waterberg Project had been accepted by the DMR for consideration. The mining right application consisted of a mining work program, social and labour plan and associated environmental applications. The mining right application was supported by the Company and all of the Waterberg joint venture partners including Implats, JOGMEC and Mnombo. The process of consultation under the MPRDA and applicable environmental assessment regulations for the mining right application has commenced.

The Company has been actively engaged with shareholders to explain the new focus on the Waterberg Project and the Company's immediate and medium term plans. Market interest in palladium has recently been increasing. The Company believes that the transaction with Implats provides an endorsement of the Waterberg Project and a mine to market roadmap.

Factors which may have a material effect on the Company's net sales or revenues, income from continuing operations, profitability, liquidity or capital resources, or that would cause reported financial information not necessarily to be indicative of future operating results or financial condition are set forth in Item 3.D.- Risk Factors.

#### **E. Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements**

There are no off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future effect on the Company's financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenues or expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources that is material to investors.

#### **F. Tabular Disclosure of Contractual Obligations**

The following table discloses the Company's contractual obligations at August 31, 2018 for loan indebtedness, services, optional mineral property acquisition payments, optional exploration work and committed lease obligations for office rent and equipment.

<b>Contractual Obligations</b>	<b>Payments due by period</b>				
	<b>&lt; 1 Year</b>	<b>1-3 Years</b>	<b>3-5 Years</b>	<b>&gt; 5 Years</b>	<b>Total</b>
Lease obligations	\$ 485	\$ 403	\$ -	\$ -	\$ 888
Contractor payments	3,552	-	-	-	3,552
Convertible Note	1,474	2,949	21,464	-	25,887
LMM Facility	-	54,746	-	-	54,746
<b>Totals</b>	<b>\$ 5,511</b>	<b>\$ 58,908</b>	<b>21,464</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 85,073</b>

**ITEM 6. DIRECTORS, SENIOR MANAGEMENT AND EMPLOYEES****A. Directors and Senior Management**

The following table sets forth the Company's current directors and executive officers, with each position and office held by them. As of the date of filing of this Annual Report, directors and executive officers of the Company, as a group, beneficially own, control or direct, directly or indirectly, approximately 721,488 Common Shares representing approximately 0.25% of the Company's issued and outstanding Common Shares.

The term of office for each director of the Company expires at the annual general meeting of shareholders where they can be nominated for re-election.

<b>Name and Place of Residence</b>	<b>Position</b>	<b>Age</b>	<b>Date First Elected or Appointed</b>
R. MICHAEL JONES British Columbia, Canada	President, Chief Executive Officer and Director	55	February 18, 2002
FRANK HALLAM British Columbia, Canada	Chief Financial Officer, Corporate Secretary and Director	58	February 18, 2002
IAIN McLEAN <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup> British Columbia, Canada	Director (Chairman of the Board)	63	February 18, 2002
TIMOTHY MARLOW <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup> British Columbia, Canada	Director	74	June 15, 2011
DIANA WALTERS <sup>(1)(2)(3)</sup> North Salem, New York, USA	Director	55	July 16, 2013
JOHN A. COPELYN Cape Town, South Africa	Director	68	May 15, 2018

**Notes:**

- (1) Member of the Audit Committee
- (2) Member of the Compensation Committee
- (3) Member of the Governance and Nomination Committee

**R. Michael Jones**

Mr. Jones has over twenty five years of experience as a professional geological engineer and has been involved with the raising of over \$1 billion for exploration, mining development and production. In addition to co-founding Platinum Group Metals Ltd., Mr. Jones was a founder of Glimmer Resources Inc. and was responsible for the discovery of the Glimmer Gold mine, now Blackfox, in Ontario. During a six-year tenure as President of Cathedral Gold Corp., Mr. Jones ran a producing gold mining company and was involved in the review of a feasibility study and financing for the \$1 billion Diavik Mine project during two years as Vice President with Aber Resources. Mr. Jones was a co-founder and director of West Timmins Mining that was purchased by producing company Lake Shore Gold Corp. in 2009 and was a co-founder and former director until 2012 of MAG Silver Corp. Mr. Jones is a Director, President and Chief Executive Officer of West Kirkland Mining Inc. and a director of Nextraction Energy Corp. Mr. Jones served on the Securities Policy Advisory Committee of the British Columbia Securities Commission for six years and holds a B.A.Sc. in geological engineering from the University of Toronto.



**Frank Hallam**

Mr. Hallam was the original founder of New Millennium Metals Corp, a predecessor company to Platinum Group Metals Ltd. Mr. Hallam has extensive operating and financial experience at the senior management level with several TSX and NYSE listed resource companies and has over twenty years of experience working in East and South Africa. In his role as CFO and Director with Tan Range Exploration he set up and administered exploration offices in Tanzania, Ethiopia and Eritrea, among others. Mr. Hallam has been involved in raising over \$1 billion for exploration, mining development and production and has been involved in negotiating and managing property deals with Anglo Platinum Ltd., Barrick Gold Corporation, Johannesburg Consolidated Investments and Newmont Mining Corporation. Mr. Hallam was a co-founder and director of West Timmins Mining that was purchased by producing company Lake Shore Gold Corp. in 2009, where he served as a director until April 2016. Mr. Hallam was a co-founder and former director until 2014 of MAG Silver Corp. Mr. Hallam also serves as CFO, Corporate Secretary & Director of West Kirkland Mining Inc. and is a director of Nextraction Energy Corp. Mr. Hallam previously served as an auditor in the mining practice of Coopers and Lybrand. He is a chartered accountant and has a degree in business administration from Simon Fraser University.

**Iain McLean**

Mr. McLean is experienced in mine operations and senior management positions in technology companies. Mr. McLean's past roles include Chief Operating Officer of MineSense Technologies from August 2014 to September 2015; and Vice President for Gemcom Software International/Dassault Systemes GEOVIA from June 2010 to July 2014. Mr. McLean holds a degree in mining engineering from the Royal School of Mines, a Degree in Archaeology from the University of Leicester and a Masters Degree in Egyptology from Cambridge University. Mr. McLean also holds an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School.

**Timothy Marlow**

Mr. Marlow has over thirty years of mining engineering and mine operating experience in North America, South America, Africa and Asia. His mining and project experience spans the world and he has specific African experience in Ghana and Zambia. Mr. Marlow is President of Marlow & Associates since 1995 and was President of Philippine Gold Consulting LLC from 1995 2014. Mr. Marlow is a graduate of the Camborne School of Mines and is registered as a C.Eng, Registered Charter Engineer in the UK. He is a member of the Institute of Mining and Metallurgy UK and a Qualified Person as defined by NI-43-101 for mining.

**Diana Walters**

Ms. Walters has over twenty-eight years of experience in the Natural Resources sector, both as an investment banker and in operating roles. She is the former President and CEO of Liberty Metals & Mining, LLC and was a Managing Partner of Eland Capital, LLC, a Natural Resources advisory firm. Ms. Walters has extensive investment experience with both debt and equity through leadership roles at Credit Suisse, HSBC and other firms. Ms. Walters graduated with honors from the University of Texas at Austin with a BA in Plan II Liberal Arts and an MA in Energy and Mineral Resources.

**John A. Copelyn**

Mr. Copelyn has been CEO of Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited since joining in 1997. Prior to this, he was a member of the South African parliament and general secretary of the Southern African Clothing and Textile Workers Union. Mr. Copelyn is also Chairman of E Media Holdings Ltd., a JSE listed company that comprises some of the leading media companies in South Africa, Tsogo Sun Holdings Ltd., which owns and operates hotels and casinos and

is listed on the JSE, Deneb Investments Ltd., an investment holding company with interests in textile manufacturing and property investments and Niveus Investments Ltd., an investment holding company.

---

There are no family relationship between any of the persons named above. Furthermore, there are no arrangements or understandings with major shareholders, customers, suppliers or others, pursuant to which any of the persons named above were selected as a director or member of senior management.

**Corporate Cease Trade Orders, Bankruptcies, Penalties or Sanctions**

Except as disclosed below, no director or executive officer of the Company (or any of their personal holding companies) is, or during the ten years preceding the date of filing of this Annual Report has been, a director, chief executive officer or chief financial officer of any company, including the Company, that was subject to a cease trade order, an order similar to a cease trade order, or an order that denied the relevant company access to any exemption under securities legislation that was in effect for a period of more than 30 consecutive days:

- (a) that was issued while the director or executive officer was acting in the capacity as director, chief executive officer or chief financial officer; or
- (b) that was issued after the director or executive officer ceased to be a director, chief executive officer or chief financial officer and which resulted from an event that occurred while that person was acting in the capacity as director, chief executive officer or chief financial officer;

Mr. Jones and Mr. Hallam are directors of NE, which is currently the subject of a Cease Trade Order of the BCSC issued on May 8, 2015 for failing to file a comparative financial statement for its financial year ended December 31, 2014 and a Form 51-102F1 Management's Discussion and Analysis for the period ended December 31, 2014 (the **Required Records**). NE is working to can complete the Required Records.

No director or executive officer of the Company, or a shareholder holding a sufficient number of securities of the Company to affect materially the control of the Company, (or any of their personal holding companies):

- (a) is, as at the date of filing of this Annual Report or during the ten years preceding the date of filing of this Annual Report has been, a director or executive officer, of any company, including the Company, that while the director or executive officer was acting in that capacity or within a year of that person ceasing to act in that capacity, became bankrupt, made a proposal under any legislation relating to bankruptcy or insolvency or was subject to or instituted any proceedings, arrangement, or compromise with creditors, or had a receiver, receiver manager, or trustee appointed to hold its assets; or
- (b) has, within the ten years before the date of this Annual Report, become bankrupt, made a proposal under any legislation relating to bankruptcy or insolvency, or become subject to or instituted any proceedings, arrangement or compromise with creditors, or had a receiver, receiver manager or trustee appointed to hold the assets of that director or executive officer.

No director or executive officer of the Company, or a shareholder holding a sufficient number of securities of the Company to affect materially the control of the Company, (or any of their personal holding companies) has been subject to:

---

- (a) any penalties or sanctions imposed by a court relating to securities legislation or by a securities regulatory authority or has entered into a settlement agreement with a securities regulatory authority; or
- (b) any other penalties or sanctions imposed by a court or regulatory body which would likely be considered important to a reasonable investor in making an investment decision.

### **Promoters**

No individuals acted as promoters of the Company within the two most recently completed financial years or during the current financial year.

### **B. Compensation**

The following table sets forth all compensation paid or accrued by the Company to its directors and members of its administrative, supervisory or management bodies for the year ended August 31, 2018.

Name and Principal Position	Year	Annual Compensation		Other Annual Compensation	Long Term Compensation Awards <sup>(1)</sup> Payouts			All Other Compensation
		Salary (\$)	Bonus (\$)		Securities Under SARs Granted (#)	Restricted Shares / Units Awarded (\$)	LTIP (\$)	
R. Michael Jones President, CEO and Director	2018	411,248	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
Frank Hallam CFO, Corp. Sec. and Director	2018	372,082	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
Iain McLean Chairman and Director	2018	N/A	Nil	52,929	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
Timothy Marlow Director	2018	N/A	Nil	37,317	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
Diana Walters Director	2018	N/A	Nil	37,317	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil
John A. Copelyn <sup>(2)</sup> Director	2018	N/A	Nil	5,325	Nil	Nil	Nil	Nil

### **Note:**

(1) For additional details, see Item 6.E Share Ownership.

(2) Fees paid to HCI.

During the year ended August 31, 2018, no amounts were set aside for the foregoing persons to provide pension, retirement or similar benefits.

### **C. Board Practices**

The board of directors has determined the number of directors at six and currently consists of six directors. Each director was elected at the Company's annual general meeting of stockholders held on February 23, 2018 other than Mr. Copelyn who was appointed on May 15, 2018 pursuant to the Articles of the Company whereby the directors may appoint one or more additional directors to serve until the next annual general meeting of shareholders of the Company.



Each director elected will hold office until the next annual general meeting of the Company or until his or her successor is elected or appointed, unless his or her office is earlier vacated in accordance with the Articles of the Company or the provisions of the BCBCA. See Directors and Senior Management for the dates on which its current directors were first elected or appointed.

On January 13, 2015, the Board adopted a majority voting policy (the **Policy**), as amended on February 18, 2015. The Policy requires that any nominee for director who receives a greater number of votes withheld than votes for his or her election will be required to tender an offer to resign (a **Resignation Offer**). The Policy applies only to uncontested elections, which are elections of directors where the number of nominees for election as director is equal to the number of directors to be elected at such meeting. Following a tender of a Resignation Offer, the Governance and Nomination Committee will consider the Resignation Offer and will recommend to the Board whether or not to accept or reject the Resignation Offer or to propose alternative actions. The Governance and Nomination Committee will be expected to recommend accepting the Resignation Offer, except in situations where extraordinary circumstances would warrant the applicable director to continue to serve on the Board. Within 90 days following the applicable annual general meeting, the Board will make a determination of the action to take with respect to the Resignation Offer and will promptly disclose by news release its decision to accept or reject the director's Resignation Offer or to propose alternative actions as referenced in the Policy. If the Board has decided to reject the Resignation Offer or to pursue any alternative action other than accepting the Resignation Offer, then the Board will disclose in the news release its reasons for doing so. The applicable director will not participate in either the Governance and Nomination Committee or Board deliberations on his or her Resignation Offer.

We have not entered into contracts providing for benefits to the directors upon termination of office, other than as described below.

### **Agreements with Executive Officers**

The Company has the following plans or arrangements in respect of remuneration that may be received by the Company's executive officers that are also directors of the Company in respect of compensating such officer in the event of termination of employment (as a result of resignation, change of control or change of responsibilities).

Pursuant to the employment agreements, each of R. Michael Jones and Frank R. Hallam (hereinafter referred to as **Jones** and **Hallam**, respectively; each an **Officer** and together, the **Officers**) may resign by giving 90 days' written notice and thereafter be entitled to his annual salary earned to the date of cessation, together with any outstanding earned but untaken vacation pay, reimbursement of any final expenses and all bonuses earned in respect of any period before the date of cessation (collectively, the **Final Wages**).

If an Officer is terminated without cause or resigns for good cause (as defined below), the Company will pay the Officer:

- (a) the Final Wages; and
- (b) an additional amount equal to 24 months (for Jones and Hallam) of the Officers' annual salary (the **Severance Period**), and

the Officer's current benefits will continue until the earlier of the end of the Severance Period and receipt of similar benefits through other employment.

---

In the case of either a termination or resignation for good cause following a Change of Control (as defined below), the Company will pay severance as follows (the **COC Severance**):

- (a) the Final Wages;
  - (b) an additional amount equivalent to 24 months' annual salary (the **COC Severance Period**);
  - (c) an additional lump sum equal to the sum of the amounts paid as bonuses to the Officer in respect of the completed three bonus years preceding the date of termination divided by 36 (the **Average Monthly Bonus**) multiplied by the number of completed months in the current bonus year through to the termination date; and
  - (d) an additional lump sum equal to the Average Monthly Bonus multiplied by the number of months in the COC Severance Period, and
- the Officers' current benefits will continue until the earlier of the end of the COC Severance Period and the Officers' receipt of similar benefits through other employment.

In addition, each Officer shall have a special right to resign on one month's written notice, delivered within 60 days following a Change of Control, in which case the Officer will be entitled to receive the COC Severance.

Upon a Change of Control, any non-vested options held by the Officer will be deemed vested on a Change of Control. Where the Change of Control is a transaction in which the shares of the Company are to be purchased or otherwise exchanged or acquired, such vesting shall take place so as to permit the Officer, at his election to participate in the transaction in respect of any such non-vested option shares, provided that if, for any reason such Change of Control transaction does not complete, the options shall revert to their original terms, including as to vesting and all options the vesting of which is accelerated pursuant to the foregoing shall remain open for exercise until the earlier of their expiry date or one year from the Change of Control.

**Change of Control** means:

- (a) the acquisition, beneficially, directly or indirectly, by any person or group of persons acting jointly or in concert, within the meaning of Multilateral Instrument 62-104 *Takeover Bids and Issuer Bids* (or any successor instrument thereto), of Common Shares of the Company which, when added to all other Common Shares of the Company at the time held beneficially, directly or indirectly by such person or persons acting jointly or in concert, totals for the first time more than 50% of the outstanding Common Shares of the Company; or
  - (b) the removal, by extraordinary resolution of the shareholders of the Company, of more than 51% of the then incumbent directors of the Company, or the election of a majority of directors to the Company's Board who were not nominees of the Company's incumbent Board at the time immediately preceding such election; or
  - (c) the consummation of a sale of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, or the consummation of a reorganization, merger or other transaction which has substantially the same effect; or
-

- (d) a merger, consolidation, plan of arrangement or reorganization of the Company that results in the beneficial, direct or indirect transfer of more than 50% of the total voting power of the resulting entity's outstanding securities to a person, or group of persons acting jointly and in concert, who are different from the person that have, beneficially, directly or indirectly, more than 50% of the total voting power prior to such transaction.

**good cause** means the occurrence of one of the following events without the Officer's written consent:

- (a) upon the material breach of any material term of the Employment Agreement by the Company if such breach or default has not been remedied to the reasonable satisfaction of the Officer within 30 days after written notice of the breach of default has been delivered by the Officer to the Company; or
- (b) a material reduction in the Officer's responsibilities, title or reporting, except as a result of the Officer's disability; or
- (c) any reduction by the Company in the Officer's then current annual salary; or
- (d) relocation of the Officer's principal office location by more than 25 kilometers

#### **Deferred Share Unit Plan**

The Deferred Share Unit Plan (the **DSU Plan**) permits directors who are not salaried officers or employees of the Company or a related corporation (referred to as **Eligible Directors**) to convert into DSUs the fees that would otherwise be payable by the Company to them relating to future services for their participation on the Board and on committees of the Board, including all annual retainers and amounts that would be payable for serving as the Chair of the Board and/or as a chair of a committee of the Board (excluding any reimbursement of expenses) (the **Board Fees**). Only Eligible Directors are permitted to participate in the DSU Plan. The DSU Plan is administered by the Board or such other persons as may be designated by the Board from time to time, through the recommendation of the Compensation Committee (the **DSUP Administrators**).

With respect to the conversion of Board Fees into DSUs, each Eligible Director may, under the DSU Plan, elect to convert a minimum of 20% up to a maximum of 100%, in 10% increments, of his or her future Board Fees for the relevant period into DSUs in *lieu* of being paid such fees in cash. On the date on which the relevant Board Fees are payable, the number of DSUs to be credited to a participating Eligible Director (a **DSU Participant**) will be determined by dividing an amount equal to the designated percentage of the Board Fees that the DSU Participant has elected to have credited in DSUs on that fee payment date, by the market value of a Common Share on that fee payment date. Eligible Directors are entitled to make an election under the DSU Plan in respect of the period from January 1 through December 31 no later than December 31 of the prior year. Newly elected Eligible Directors will have 30 days from the date of his/her appointment to make an election in respect of the remainder of such calendar year. All such elections will be irrevocable in respect of such period.

If a DSU Participant becomes a salaried officer or an employee of the Company or a related corporation, such DSU Participant shall thereupon be suspended from further participation in the DSU Plan in the manner set out in the DSU Plan.

The DSUP Administrators may also, in their sole discretion from time to time, award DSUs to one or more Eligible Directors for the purposes of providing additional equity related remuneration to such Eligible Directors in respect of future services as an Eligible Director. With respect to the award of such DSUs, the DSUP Administrators will determine when DSUs will be awarded, the number of DSUs to be awarded, the vesting criteria for each award of DSUs, if any, and all other terms and conditions of each award. Unless the DSUP Administrators determine otherwise, such DSUs will be subject to a vesting schedule whereby they will become vested in equal instalments over three years with one-third vesting on the first anniversary of the award and one-third vesting on each of the subsequent



anniversaries of the award. The DSUP Administrators may consider alternatives for vesting criteria related to the Company's performance and have the flexibility under the DSU Plan to apply such vesting criteria to particular awards of DSUs. The DSU Plan also provides that: (a) where the Termination of Board Service (as defined below) of a DSU Participant (or termination of service as a salaried officer or employee, if applicable) occurs as a result of the DSU Participant's death, all unvested DSUs of that DSU Participant will vest effective on the date of death; and (b) if there is a change of control (as such term is defined in the DSU Plan), all unvested DSUs will vest immediately prior to such change of control.

---

If cash dividends are paid by the Company on the Common Shares, a DSU Participant will also be credited with dividend equivalents in the form of additional DSUs based on the number of vested DSUs the DSU Participant holds on the record date for the payment of such dividend.

Canadian DSU Participants are not entitled to redeem any DSUs (regardless of their vested status) until after the DSU Participant ceases to be a member of the Board by way of retirement, non-re-election as a director, resignation, incapacity or death (each, a **Termination of Board Service**), or termination of service as a salaried officer or employee, if applicable.

Except with respect to U.S. Eligible Directors (defined below) a DSU Participant (or the DSU Participant's legal representative, as the case may be) will be permitted to redeem his or her vested DSUs no earlier than following Termination of Board Service (and termination of service as a salaried officer or employee, if applicable) by giving written notice to the Company to redeem on one or more dates specified by the DSU Participant (or the DSU Participant's legal representative, as the case may be), which dates shall not, in any event, be earlier than the tenth day following the release of the Company's quarterly or annual financial results immediately following such termination, or later than December 1 of the first calendar year commencing after the time of such termination. The DSUs of an Eligible Director who is a citizen or resident of the United States, as defined in the United States Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the **Code**), and any other Eligible Director who is subject to tax under the Code with respect to DSUs granted pursuant to the DSU Plan (each, a **U.S. Eligible Director**) will be redeemed during the calendar year following the year in which the U.S. Eligible Director experiences a separation from service (as defined in the Code) on a date selected by the Company. Upon redemption of DSUs, the Company will pay to the DSU Participant (or the DSU Participant's legal representative, as the case may be) a lump sum cash payment equal to the number of DSUs to be redeemed multiplied by the market value of a Common Share on the redemption date, net of any applicable deductions and withholdings. The DSU Plan does not entitle any DSU Participant to acquire Common Shares in connection with the redemption of vested DSUs under the DSU Plan.

The DSU Plan also contains provisions that apply to DSU Participants who are subject to tax in both the United States and Canada. For such DSU Participants, in limited circumstances specified in the DSU Plan where there is a conflict in the requirements of U.S. tax laws and Canadian tax laws, the relevant DSUs will be forfeited.

---

## Audit Committee

### *The Audit Committee's Charter*

The following is the text of the Audit Committee's charter:

AUDIT COMMITTEE CHARTER  
PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.  
(the Corporation )

#### 1. General

The Board of Directors of the Corporation (the Board ) has established an Audit Committee (the Committee ) to assist the Board in fulfilling its oversight responsibilities. The Committee will review and oversee the financial reporting and accounting process of the Corporation, the system of internal control and management of financial risks, the external audit process, and the Corporation's process for monitoring compliance with laws and regulations and its own code of business conduct. In performing its duties, the Committee will maintain effective working relationships with the Board, management, and the external auditors and monitor the independence of those auditors. To perform his or her role effectively, each Committee member will obtain an understanding of the responsibilities of Committee membership as well as the Corporation's business, operations and risks.

The Corporation's independent auditor is ultimately accountable to the Board and to the Committee. The Board and Committee, as representatives of the Corporation's shareholders, have the ultimate authority and responsibility to evaluate the independent auditor, to nominate annually the independent auditor to be proposed for shareholder approval, to determine appropriate compensation for the independent auditor, and where appropriate, to replace the outside auditor. In the course of fulfilling its specific responsibilities hereunder, the Committee must maintain free and open communication between the Corporation's independent auditors, Board and Corporation management. The responsibilities of a member of the Committee are in addition to such member's duties as a member of the Board.

#### 2. Members

The Board will in each year appoint a minimum of three (3) directors as members of the Committee. All members of the Committee shall be non-management directors and shall be independent within the meaning of all applicable U.S. and Canadian securities laws and the rules of the Toronto Stock Exchange and the NYSE MKT (collectively, the Applicable Regulations ), unless otherwise exempt under the Applicable Regulations.

None of the members of the Committee may have participated in the preparation of the financial statements of the Corporation or any current subsidiary of the Corporation at any time during the past three years.

All members of the Committee shall be able to read and understand fundamental financial statements and must be able to read and understand fundamental financial standards and satisfy all applicable financial literacy requirements of the Applicable Regulations. Additionally, at least one member of the Committee shall: (a) be financially sophisticated, in that he or she shall have past employment experience in finance or accounting, requisite professional certification in accounting, or any other comparable experience or background which results in the individual's financial sophistication, which may include being or having been a chief executive officer, chief financial officer, or other senior officer with financial oversight responsibilities; and (b) be an audit committee financial expert within the meaning of U.S. federal securities laws.

---

3. Duties

The Committee will have the following duties:

Gain an understanding of whether internal control recommendations made by external auditors have been implemented by management.

Gain an understanding of the current areas of greatest financial risk and whether management is managing these effectively.

Review significant accounting and reporting issues, including recent professional and regulatory pronouncements, and understand their impact on the financial statements.

Review any legal matters which could significantly impact the financial statements as reported on by the Corporation's counsel and engage outside independent counsel and other advisors whenever as deemed necessary by the Committee to carry out its duties.

Review the Corporation's annual and quarterly financial statements, including Management's Discussion and Analysis with respect thereto, and all annual and interim earnings press releases, prior to public dissemination, including any certification, report, opinion or review rendered by the external auditors and determine whether they are complete and consistent with the information known to Committee members; determine that the auditors are satisfied that the financial statements have been prepared in accordance with generally accepted accounting principles.

Pay particular attention to complex and/or unusual transactions such as those involving derivative instruments and consider the adequacy of disclosure thereof.

Focus on judgmental areas, for example those involving valuation of assets and liabilities and other commitments and contingencies.

Review audit issues related to the Corporation's material associated and affiliated companies that may have a significant impact on the Corporation's equity investment.

Meet with management and the external auditors to review the annual financial statements and the results of the audit.

Evaluate the fairness of the interim financial statements and related disclosures including the associated Management's Discussion and Analysis, and obtain explanations from management on whether:

actual financial results for the interim period varied significantly from budgeted or projected results;

generally accepted accounting principles have been consistently applied;

there are any actual or proposed changes in accounting or financial reporting practices; or

there are any significant or unusual events or transactions which require disclosure and, if so, consider the adequacy of that disclosure.



Review the external auditors' proposed audit scope and approach and ensure no unjustifiable restriction or limitations have been placed on the scope.

Recommend to the Board an external auditor to be nominated for appointment by the Corporation's shareholders. Subject to the appointment of the Corporation's external auditor by the Corporation's shareholders, the Committee will be directly responsible for the appointment, compensation, retention and oversight of the work of external auditor engaged for the purpose of preparing or issuing an auditor's report or performing other audit, review or attest services for the Corporation, including the resolution of disagreements between management and the external auditor regarding financial reporting. The Corporation's external auditor shall report directly to the Committee.

Review with the Corporation's management, on a regular basis, the performance of the external auditors, the terms of the external auditor's engagement, accountability and experience.

Pre-approve all non-audit services and tax services to be provided to the Corporation or its subsidiary entities by the external auditor, or other registered accounting firm.

Consider at least annually the independence of the external auditors, including reviewing the range of services provided in the context of all consulting services obtained by the Corporation, including:

insuring receipt from the independent auditor of a formal written statement delineating all relationships between the independent auditor and the Company, consistent with the Independence Standards Board Standard No. 1 and related Canadian regulatory body standards;

considering and discussing with the independent auditor any relationships or services, including non-audit services, that may impact the objectivity and independence of the independent auditor; and

as necessary, taking, or recommending that the Board take, appropriate action to oversee the independence of the independent auditor.

Ensure that adequate procedures are in place for the review of the Corporation's public disclosure of financial information extracted or derived from the Corporation's financial statements, other than the public disclosure contained in the Corporation's financial statements, Management's Discussion and Analysis and annual and interim earnings press releases; and must periodically assess the adequacy of those procedures.

Review any significant disagreement among management and the external auditors in connection with the preparation of the financial statements.

Review and approve the Corporation's hiring policies regarding partners, employees and former partners and employees of the present and former external auditors of the Corporation.

Establish a procedure for:

the confidential, anonymous submission by employees of the Corporation of concerns regarding questionable accounting or auditing matters; and

the receipt, retention and treatment of complaints received by the Corporation regarding accounting, internal accounting controls, or auditing matters.



Meet separately with the external auditors to discuss any matters that the committee or auditors believe should be discussed privately in the absence of management.

Endeavour to cause the receipt and discussion on a timely basis of any significant findings and recommendations made by the external auditors.

Ensure that the Board is aware of matters which may significantly impact the financial condition or affairs of the business.

Review and oversee all related party transactions within the meaning of the Applicable Regulations.

Perform other functions as requested by the Board.

If necessary, institute special investigations and, if appropriate, hire special counsel or experts to assist, and set the compensation to be paid to such special counsel or other experts.

Review and re-assess annually the adequacy of this Charter and recommend updates to this charter; receive approval of changes from the Board.

With regard to the Corporation's internal control procedures, the Committee is responsible to:

review the appropriateness and effectiveness of the Corporation's policies and business practices which impact on the financial integrity of the Corporation, including those related to internal auditing, insurance, accounting, information services and systems and financial controls, management reporting and risk management; and

review compliance under the Corporation's business conduct and ethics policies and to periodically review these policies and recommend to the Board changes which the Committee may deem appropriate; and

review any unresolved issues between management and the external auditors that could affect the financial reporting or internal controls of the Corporation; and

periodically review the Corporation's financial and auditing procedures and the extent to which recommendations made by the internal audit staff or by the external auditors have been implemented.

4. Chair

The Committee will in each year appoint the Chair of the Committee from among the members of the Committee. In the Chair's absence, or if the position is vacant, the Committee may select another member as Chair. The Chair will not have a casting vote.

5. Meetings

The Committee will meet at least once every calendar quarter. Special meetings shall be convened as required. Notices calling meetings shall be sent to all members of the Committee, all Board members and the external auditor. The external auditor of the Corporation must be given reasonable notice of, and has the right to appear before and to be heard at, each meeting of the Committee. At the request of the external auditor, the Committee must convene a meeting of the Committee to consider any matter that the external auditor believes should be brought to the attention of the Board or shareholders of the Corporation.





The Committee may invite such other persons (e.g. without limitation, the President or Chief Financial Officer) to its meetings, as it deems appropriate.

6. Quorum

A majority of members of the Committee, present in person, by teleconferencing, or by videoconferencing, or by any combination of the foregoing, will constitute a quorum.

7. Removal and Vacancy

A member may resign from the Committee, and may also be removed and replaced at any time by the Board, and will automatically cease to be a member as soon as the member ceases to be a director of the Corporation. The Board will fill vacancies in the Committee by appointment from among the directors in accordance with Section 2 of this Charter. Subject to quorum requirements, if a vacancy exists on the Committee, the remaining members will exercise all of the Committee's powers.

8. Authority The Committee may:

engage independent counsel and other advisors as it determines necessary to carry out its duties.

set and pay the compensation for any advisors employed by the Committee; and

communicate directly with the internal and external auditors.

The Committee may also, within the scope of its responsibilities, seek any information it requires from any employee and from external parties, to obtain outside legal or professional advice, and to ensure the attendance of Corporation officers at meetings as appropriate.

9. Secretary and Minutes

The Chair of the Committee will appoint a member of the Committee or other person to act as Secretary of the Committee for purposes of a meeting of the Committee. The minutes of the Committee meetings shall be in writing and duly entered into the books of the Corporation, and will be circulated to all members of the Board.

10. Funding

The Corporation shall provide for appropriate funding, as determined by the Committee, for payment of

- (a) compensation to any registered public accounting firm engaged for the purposes of preparing or issuing an audit report or performing other audit, review or attest services for the Corporation;
- (b) compensation to any advisers employed by the Committee; and (c) ordinary administrative expenses of the Committee that are necessary or appropriate in carry out its duties.

***Composition***

The Audit Committee has been comprised of Iain McLean (Chairman), Diana Walters and Timothy Marlow since February 23, 2018. All three members of the Audit Committee are independent and financially literate, meaning they are able to read and understand the Company's financial statements and to understand the breadth and level of complexity of the issues that can reasonably be expected to be raised by the Company's financial statements.



***Relevant Education and Experience***

In addition to each member's general business experience, the education and experience of each member of the Audit Committee that is relevant to the performance of his or her responsibilities as a member of the Audit Committee are set forth below:

<b>Member</b>	<b>Experience/Education</b>
<b>Iain McLean,</b> B.Sc.Eng (ARSM), M.B.A., MIMM. C. Eng.	Mr. McLean has experience as a senior executive in several public companies managing operations, listings, capital raising, etc. He also has experience in underground mining operations in the UK and South Africa. Mr. McLean has an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School and a B.Sc (Eng.) in Mining from the Imperial College of Science and Technology (London, England). In addition to his education, Mr. McLean has gained relevant experience acting as the Chief Operating Officer of several private technology companies since 1995 and as the Vice President of Operations at Ballard Power Systems from 1993 to 1995. The board of directors has determined that Mr. McLean is an audit committee financial expert within the meaning of the regulations promulgated by the SEC and is independent within the meaning of the NYSE American Company Guide.
<b>Diana Walters,</b> BA, MA.	Ms. Walters has over 28 years in the financial services sector and has served on the audit committee of other publicly-traded companies. Ms. Walters graduated with honours from the University of Texas at Austin with a BA in Plan II Liberal arts and an MA in Energy and Mineral Resources. Ms. Walters has worked on the natural resources sector both as an investment banker and in operating roles. In addition, she gained extensive investment experience with both debt and equity through leadership roles at Credit Suisse, HSBC and other firms. The board of directors has determined that Ms. Walters is an audit committee financial expert within the meaning of the regulations promulgated by the SEC and is independent within the meaning of the NYSE American Company Guide.
<b>Timothy Marlow,</b> C.Eng.	Mr. Marlow is a registered Charter Engineered in the UK with over 30 years of experience in mining engineering and mine operations in the Americas, Africa and Asia. Mr. Marlow has held roles ranging from project engineer, services and maintenance superintendent, and general manager to Vice President of Operational Excellence for a multi mine group. His mining and project experience spans the world and he has specific African experience in Ghana and Zambia. Mr. Marlow is a graduate of the Camborne School of Mines and is registered as a C.Eng, Registered Charter Engineer in the UK. He is a member of the Institute of Mining and Metallurgy UK and a Qualified Person as defined by NI-43-101 for mining. The board of directors has determined that Mr. Marlow is independent within the meaning of the NYSE American Company Guide.

During earlier periods of the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, the Audit Committee was comprised of Mr. McLean, Ms. Walters and then-directors Barry Smee and Eric Carlson, each of which also financially literate and independent within the meaning of the NYSE American Company Guide.

***Responsibilities***

See the Audit Committee's Charter above for disclosure on the Audit Committee's responsibilities.



***Reliance on Certain Exemptions***

At no time since the commencement of the Company's most recently completed financial year has the Company relied on any of the exemptions set out in Section 2.4 (*De Minimis Non-audit Services*), Section 3.2 (*Initial Public Offerings*), Section 3.4 (*Events Outside Control of Member*), Section 3.5 (*Death, Disability or Resignation of Audit Committee Member*), Subsection 3.3(2) (*Controlled Companies*), 3.6 (*Temporary Exemption for Limited and Exceptional Circumstances*) or Section 3.8 (*Acquisition of Financial Literacy*) of National Instrument 52-110 – Audit Committees (“**NI 52-110**”), or an exemption from NI 52-110, in whole or in part, granted under Part 8 of NI 52-110.

***Audit Committee Oversight***

At no time since the commencement of the Company's most recently completed financial year was a recommendation of the Audit Committee to nominate or compensate an external auditor not adopted by the board of directors.

***Pre-Approval Policies and Procedures***

The Company's Audit Committee is authorized to review the performance of the Company's independent auditors and pre-approves all audit and non-audit services to be provided to the Company by its independent auditor. Prior to granting any pre-approval, the Audit Committee must be satisfied that the performance of the services in question is not prohibited by applicable securities laws and will not compromise the independence of the independent auditor. All non-audit services performed by the Company's auditor for the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018 and August 31, 2017 have been pre-approved by the Audit Committee.

***External Auditor Service Fees (By Category)***

Disclosure on the aggregate fees billed by the Company's current independent auditor, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, during the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018 and August 31, 2017 are described under “Item 16.C. Principal Accountant Fees and Services”.

**Compensation Committee*****Composition***

The Compensation Committee has been comprised of Diana Walters (Chairman), Iain McLean and Timothy Marlow since February 23, 2018. All three members of the Compensation Committee are independent. During earlier periods of the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, the Compensation Committee was comprised of Mr. McLean (Chairman), Ms. Walters and then-director Barry Smee, who was also independent.

***Responsibilities***

The responsibilities of the Compensation Committee include but are not limited to:

Review, approve and report to the Board annually on management's succession plans for all executive officers, other than the CEO, including specific development plans and career planning for potential successors;

---

Review and recommend to the Board for approval the general compensation philosophy and guidelines for all directors and executive officers, including the CEO. This includes incentive plan design and other remuneration;

Review and recommend to the Board the compensation, including salary, incentives, benefits and other perquisites, of all directors and executive officers, except for the CEO; and

Report on executive compensation as required in public disclosure documents.

Review and approve corporate goals and objectives relevant to CEO compensation, evaluate the CEO's performance in light of those corporate goals and objectives, consider the Corporate Governance and Nomination Committee's report respecting the CEO's performance and recommend to the Board the CEO's compensation level based on this evaluation, including salary, incentives, benefits and other perquisites.

Establish compensation and recruitment policies and practices for the Company's executive officers, including establishing levels of salary, incentives, benefits and other perquisites provided to executives of the Corporation and its subsidiaries; provided, however, that the compensation of individual executive officers shall be subject to the Board's approval.

Administration of the Company's stock option plans and stock incentive plans, and recommending to the Board awards under the plans.

The Committee shall review all executive compensation disclosure before the Company publicly discloses this information.

The Committee will annually review and re-assess the adequacy of this Charter and recommend updates to this Charter and will receive approval of all changes from the Board.

### **Governance and Nomination Committee**

#### ***Composition***

The Governance and Nomination Committee has been comprised of Timothy Marlow (Chairman), Iain McLean and Diana Walters since February 23, 2018. All three members of the Governance and Nomination Committee are independent. During earlier periods of the fiscal year ended August 31, 2018, the Governance and Nomination Committee was comprised of Mr. McLean, Ms. Walters and then-director Barry Smee (Chairman), who was also independent.

#### ***Responsibilities***

The responsibilities of the Governance and Nomination Committee include but are not limited to:

review and make recommendations to the Board respecting corporate governance in general and regarding the Board's stewardship role in the management of the Company.

review, approve and report to the Board on:

the establishment of appropriate processes for the regular evaluation of the effectiveness of the Board and its members and its committees and their charters;

in conjunction with the Chair of the Board, the performance of individual directors, the Board as a whole, and committees of the Board;

---



the performance evaluation of the Chair of the Board and the Chair of each Board Committee;

regularly, the performance evaluation of the CEO, including performance against corporate objectives.

CEO succession planning;

oversee compliance with the Company's Code of Business Conduct and Ethics (the Code), monitor compliance with the Code, investigate any alleged breach or violation of the Code, authorize any waiver granted in connection with the Code

oversee compliance with any rules, regulations or guidelines promulgated by regulatory authorities relating to corporate governance.

#### D. Employees

As of August 31, 2018, the Company's complement of managers, staff and consultants in Canada consisted of approximately 6 individuals. The Company's complement of managers, staff, consultants, security and casual workers in South Africa currently consisted of approximately 11 individuals, inclusive of 3 individuals active at the Waterberg Project conducting exploration and engineering activities related to the planned completion of a DFS expected in the first part of 2019. The Waterberg Project is operated by the Company utilizing its own staff and personnel. Contract drilling, geotechnical, engineering and support services are utilized as required.

#### E. Share Ownership

With respect to the persons listed in Compensation, above, who are current directors, officers or employees of the Company, the following table discloses the number of and percent of the Common Shares outstanding held by those persons, as of the date of this Annual Report. The Common Shares possess identical voting rights.

Name and Title	No. of Shares <sup>(1)</sup> <sup>(2)</sup>	Percent of Shares Outstanding of the Class <sup>(3)</sup>
R. Michael Jones Chairman, President, CEO and Director	355,587 <sup>(4)</sup>	*
Frank R. Hallam CFO and Director	208,626	*
Iain McLean Director	20,335	*
Timothy Marlow Director	3,000	*
Diana Walters Director	4,000	*
John A. Copelyn <sup>(5)</sup> Director	Nil	Nil

#### Notes:

\* Less than one percent

(1) Includes beneficial, direct and indirect shareholdings.

(2) Does not include stock options and other rights to purchase or acquire shares.

(3) There are 291,259,110 shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding as of the date of filing of this Annual Report.



- (4) Of these shares, 95,600 shares are held by 599143 B.C. Ltd., a company 50% owned by Mr. Jones and 50% owned by Mr. Jones wife.
- (5) Does not include shares owned by HCI, of which Mr. Copelyn is the Chief Executive Officer. For a description of such shares, see Item. 7.A Major Shareholders.

The following table discloses the stock options outstanding to the aforementioned persons as of the date of filing of this Annual Report:

Name and Title	Date of Grant or Issuance	# of Shares of Common Stock Subject to Issuance	Exercise Price Per Share	Expiry Date
R. Michael Jones President, CEO and Director	Jan 14, 2014	100,000	\$ 13.00	Jan 14, 2019
	Feb 16, 2015	120,000	\$ 6.50	Feb 16, 2020
	Dec 22, 2015	67,500	\$ 2.00	Dec 22, 2020
	Dec 23, 2016	200,000	\$ 2.00	Dec 23, 2021
Frank R. Hallam CFO and Director	Jan 14, 2014	87,500	\$ 13.00	Jan 14, 2019
	Feb 16, 2015	100,000	\$ 6.50	Feb 16, 2020
	Dec 22, 2015	60,000	\$ 2.00	Dec 22, 2020
	Dec 23, 2016	175,000	\$ 2.00	Dec 23, 2021
Iain McLean Chairman and Director	Jan 14, 2014	25,000	\$ 13.00	Jan 14, 2019
	Feb 16, 2015	35,000	\$ 6.50	Feb 16, 2020
	Dec 22, 2015	33,750	\$ 2.00	Dec 22, 2020
	Dec 23, 2016	125,000	\$ 2.00	Dec 23, 2021
Timothy Marlow Director	Jan 14, 2014	25,000	\$ 13.00	Jan 14, 2019
	Feb 16, 2015	35,000	\$ 6.50	Feb 16, 2020
	Dec 22, 2015	33,750	\$ 2.00	Dec 22, 2020
	Dec 23, 2016	125,000	\$ 2.00	Dec 23, 2021
Diana Walters Director	Jan 14, 2014	25,000	\$ 13.00	Jan 14, 2019
	Feb 16, 2015	35,000	\$ 6.50	Feb 16, 2020
	Dec 22, 2015	33,750	\$ 2.00	Dec 22, 2020
	Dec 23, 2016	125,000	\$ 2.00	Dec 23, 2021
John A. Copelyn Director	N/A	N/A	N/A	N/A

Stock Option Plan

The Stock Option Plan exists only for the purpose of governing the terms of all outstanding options that were issued under the Stock Option Plan before the adoption of the Company's Share Compensation Plan on February 23, 2017. No new options may be granted under the Stock Option Plan and the total number of outstanding options issued (but not exercised) under the Stock Option Plan count towards the maximum number of Options and restricted share units (RSUs) issuable under the Share Compensation Plan. Details of the Share Compensation Plan are provided below.

The Stock Option Plan was approved by the shareholders at the annual general meeting held on January 10, 2006 and was amended at the Company's annual general meeting held on January 10, 2007 and was ratified by the shareholders at the annual general meetings held on January 12, 2010, January 8, 2013 and February 26, 2016. The Stock Option Plan is classified as a 10% rolling plan pursuant to which the number of Common Shares which may be issuable pursuant to options previously granted and those granted under the Stock Option Plan is a maximum of 10% of the issued and outstanding Common Shares at the time of the grant.

Other information relating to the Stock Option Plan is as follows:

The Stock Option Plan is administered by the Compensation Committee.

Options may be granted to directors, senior officers, employees, non-employee directors, management company employees and consultants of the Company and its affiliates.

As at the date of filing of this Annual Report, no new options were issued or issuable under the Stock Option Plan.

As at the date of filing of this Annual Report, an aggregate of 3,085,500 options were outstanding under the Stock Option Plan, being a number of options equal to 1.06% of the Company's issued and outstanding Common Shares on such date.

The number of Common Shares reserved for issuance under options granted to Insiders (as defined in the Stock Option Plan), together with any shares issuable to Insiders pursuant to any other share compensation arrangements of the Company, may not exceed 10% of the issued and outstanding number of Common Shares unless approved by disinterested shareholders.

The number of shares issued to Insiders, together with any shares issued to Insiders pursuant to any other share compensation arrangements of the Company, within a 12-month period may not exceed 10% of the issued and outstanding number of Common Shares unless approved by disinterested shareholders.

The number of Common Shares reserved for issuance to any one individual pursuant to options or any other share compensation arrangements of the Company in any 12-month period may not exceed 5% of the number of issued and outstanding Common Shares from time to time unless approved by securityholders who are not Insiders.

The maximum aggregate number of Common Shares that may be reserved under the Stock Option Plan or other share compensation arrangements of the Company for issuance to any one consultant during any 12-month period may not exceed 2% of the issued and outstanding Common Shares.

The maximum aggregate number of Common Shares that may be reserved under the Stock Option Plan or other share compensation arrangements of the Company for issuance to persons employed in investor relations activities (as a group) may not exceed, in any 12 month period, 2% of the issued and outstanding Common Shares.

The exercise price for options granted under the Stock Option Plan is determined by the Compensation Committee, in its discretion, at the time the options are granted, but such price shall be fixed in compliance with the applicable provisions of the TSX Company Manual in force at the time of grant, and, in any event, may not be less than the closing price of the Common Shares on the TSX on the trading day immediately preceding the day on which the option is granted (provided that if there are no trades on such day then the last closing price within the preceding ten trading days will be used, and if there are no trades within such ten-day period, then the simple average of the bid and ask prices on the trading day immediately preceding the day of grant will be used).

The Stock Option Plan does not contain provisions allowing for the transformation of a stock option into a stock appreciation right.

Vesting of options is at the discretion of the Compensation Committee at the time of grant of options.

Options may be exercisable for a period of time determined by the Compensation Committee with the maximum term of options granted under the Existing Plan being ten years from the date of grant.

Options can only be exercised by the optionee as long as the optionee remains an eligible optionee pursuant to the Stock Option Plan. Options granted to any optionee who is a director, employee, consultant or management company employee must expire within 90 days after the optionee ceases to be in at least one of these categories. Options granted to any optionee who is engaged in investor relations activities must expire within 30 days after the optionee ceases to be employed to provide investor relations activities.

In the event of death of the optionee, the outstanding options shall remain in full force and effect and exercisable by the heirs or administrators of the deceased optionee in accordance with the terms of the agreement for one year from the date of death or the balance of the option period, whichever is earlier.

Options granted under the Stock Option Plan are not assignable or transferable other than pursuant to a will or by the laws of descent and distribution.

Subject to the policies of the TSX, the Board may, at any time, without further action by the Company's shareholders, amend the Stock Option Plan or any option granted thereunder in such respects as it may consider advisable and, without limiting the generality of the foregoing, it may do so to:

- ensure that the options granted thereunder will comply with any provisions respecting stock options in the income tax and other laws in force in any country or jurisdiction of which a participant to whom an option has been granted may from time to time be resident or a citizen;

- make amendments of an administrative nature;

- change vesting provisions of an option or the Existing Plan;

- change termination provisions of an option provided that the expiry date does not extend beyond the original expiry date;

- reduce the exercise price of an option for an optionee who is not an Insider;

- make any amendments required to comply with applicable laws or TSX requirements; and

- make any other amendments which are approved by the TSX.

Other than as set forth above, any other amendments to the Stock Option Plan or options granted thereunder (or options otherwise governed thereby), including the reduction of the exercise price or the cancellation and reissuance of options or other entitlements, will be subject to the approval of the shareholders and TSX.

The Stock Option Plan does not contain any provisions relating to the provision of financial assistance by the Company to optionees to facilitate the purchase of Common Shares upon the exercise of options.

The Stock Option Plan contains adjustment provisions pursuant to which the exercise price of an option and/or the number of securities underlying an option may be adjusted in the event of certain capital changes of the Company including, without limitation, share consolidations, stock-splits, dividends and corporate reorganizations. The adjustment provisions are meant to ensure that the rights associated with the option are neither enhanced nor prejudiced as a result of the capital change

---

### Share Compensation Plan

The Share Compensation Plan was adopted by the Company after it was approved by the shareholders at the annual general meeting held on February 23, 2017 (the **Adoption Date**). As of the Adoption Date, the Share Compensation Plan govern all new grants of restricted share units (the **RSUs**) and options to purchase Common Shares (the **Options**). The Company's Stock Option Plan continue to exist but only for the purpose of governing the terms of all outstanding options that were been issued under the Stock Option Plan before the adoption of the Share Compensation Plan. No new options may be granted under the Stock Option Plan and the total number of outstanding options issued (but not exercised) under the Stock Option Plan count towards the maximum number of Options and RSUs issuable under the Share Compensation Plan. A description of the Stock Option Plan is provided above.

The Share Compensation Plan is a 10% rolling plan pursuant to which the number of Common Shares which may be issuable pursuant to RSUs and Options granted under the Share Compensation Plan, options previously granted under the Existing Plan, together with those Common Shares issuable pursuant to any other security based compensation arrangements of the Company or its subsidiaries, is a maximum of 10% of the issued and outstanding Common Shares at the time of the grant.

The Share Compensation Plan provides participants (each, an **SCP Participant**), who may include participants who are citizens or residents of the United States (each, a **US-SCP Participant**), with the opportunity, through RSUs and Options, to acquire an ownership interest in the Company. The RSUs will rise and fall in value based on the value of the Common Shares. Unlike the Options, the RSUs will not require the payment of any monetary consideration to the Company. Instead, each RSU represents a right to receive one Common Share following the attainment of vesting criteria determined at the time of the award. See Restricted Share Units Vesting Provisions below. The Options, on the other hand, are rights to acquire Common Shares upon payment of monetary consideration (*i.e.*, the exercise price), subject also to vesting criteria determined at the time of the grant. See Options Vesting Provisions below.

the Company's Stock Option Plan will continue to govern the terms of all outstanding options issued under the Stock Option Plan and the total number of outstanding options issued (but not exercised) under the Stock Option Plan will count towards the maximum number of Options and RSUs issuable under the Share Compensation Plan.

### *Purpose of the Share Compensation Plan*

The stated purpose of the Share Compensation Plan is to advance the interests of the Company, its subsidiaries and its shareholders by: (a) ensuring that the interests of SCP Participants are aligned with the success of the Company and its subsidiaries; (b) encouraging stock ownership by such persons; and (c) providing compensation opportunities to attract, retain and motivate such persons.

The following people will be eligible to participate in the Share Compensation Plan: any officer or employee of the Company or any officer or employee of any subsidiary of the Company and, solely for purposes of the grant of Options, any non-employee director of the Company or any non-employee director of any subsidiary of the Company, and any consultant (defined under the Share Compensation Plan as a consultant that (x) is an individual that provides *bona fide* services to the Company pursuant to a written contract for services with the Company and such services are not in connection with the offer or sale of securities in a capital-raising transaction and do not directly or indirectly promote or maintain a market for the Company's securities, or (y) otherwise satisfies the requirements to participate in an employee benefit plan as defined in Rule 405 under the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended, registered by the Company on Form S-8). Non-employee directors of the Company will not be eligible to participate in the Share Compensation Plan in respect of RSUs. Under the Share Compensation Plan, non-employee directors of the Company will continue to be eligible to participate in respect of Options, however, only on a limited basis. See Restrictions on the Award of RSUs and Grant of Options below. Under the Existing Plan, directors of the Company have been

technically eligible to participate on a discretionary basis without any limits on participation.

---



*Administration of the Share Compensation Plan*

The Share Compensation Plan is administered by the Board or such other persons as may be designated by the Board (the **SCP Administrators**) based on the recommendation of the compensation committee of the Board (the **Compensation Committee**). The SCP Administrators determine the eligibility of persons to participate in the Share Compensation Plan, when RSUs and Options will be awarded or granted, the number of RSUs and Options to be awarded or granted, the vesting criteria for each award of RSUs and grant of Options and all other terms and conditions of each award and grant, in each case in accordance with applicable securities laws and stock exchange requirements.

*Number of Common Shares Available for Issuance under the Share Compensation Plan*

The number of Common Shares available for issuance upon the vesting of RSUs awarded and Options granted under the Share Compensation Plan will be limited to 10% of the issued and outstanding Common Shares at the time of any grant, as reduced by the number of Common Shares that may be issuable pursuant to options outstanding under the Stock Option Plan.

As of the date of filing of this Annual Report, the Company has 291,259,110 Common Shares issued and outstanding. Accordingly, the aggregate number of Common Shares that may be issued pursuant to the Share Compensation Plan is 29,125,911, less the 3,085,500 Common Shares issuable pursuant to options outstanding under the Stock Option Plan.

**ITEM 7. MAJOR SHAREHOLDERS AND RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS****A. Major Shareholders**

The Company is not directly or indirectly owned or controlled by another corporation(s), by any foreign government or by any other natural or legal person(s), severally or jointly.

There are no arrangements known to the Company the operation of which may at a subsequent date result in a change in control of the Company.

The following table discloses the holders of the Company's Common Shares who are known or believed by the Company to be the beneficial owners of 5% or more of the Company's Common Shares (the **Major Shareholders**). The percentages in the table below are based on 291,259,110 Common Shares outstanding as November 29, 2018, except as noted.

---

Identity of Person or Group	Amount and Nature of Beneficial Ownership	Percent of Class
Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited(1)	61,470,042	19.90
Franklin Resources, Inc./Franklin Advisors, Inc. (2)	59,787,569	19.90
Liberty Metals & Mining Holdings, LLC.(3)	56,160,609	18.04

**Notes:**

- (1) Based on information HCI provided to the Company as of November 14, 2018, HCI through its wholly-owned subsidiary Deepkloof Limited had sole voting and dispositive power with respect to 43,834,468 Common Shares plus 17,635,574 Common Shares issuable upon exercise of warrants bearing an exercise price of \$0.17 (reflects the application of a 19.9% beneficial ownership limitation included in certain warrants held by HCI). HCI also holds an additional 22,364,425 warrants, which are excluded from the table by virtue of the 19.9% beneficial ownership limitation.
- (2) Based on information Franklin Resources, Inc./Franklin Advisors, Inc. provided to the Company as of November 15, 2018, Franklin Resources, Inc./Franklin Advisors, Inc. had sole voting and dispositive power with respect to 50,606,629 Common Shares plus an additional 9,180,940 Common Shares issuable upon exercise of warrants bearing an exercise price of \$0.17 per common share (reflects the application of a 19.9% beneficial ownership limitation included in certain warrants held by Franklin Resources, Inc./Franklin Advisors, Inc.). Franklin Resources, Inc./Franklin Advisors, Inc. also holds an additional 9,537,255 warrants and \$8.0 million principal amount of convertible notes, the underlying shares for which are excluded from the table by virtue of 19.9% beneficial ownership limitations.
- (3) Based on information LMM provided to the Company as of November 12, 2018, 2018, LMM had sole voting and dispositive power with respect to 36,160,609 Common Shares plus an additional 20,000,000 Common Shares issuable upon exercise of warrants bearing an exercise price of \$0.17 per common share.

Except as disclosed in the table above, the Company is not aware of any other person or group who owns more than 5% of the issued and outstanding Common Shares as of November 29, 2018.

In their capacity as shareholders of the Company, the Company's Major Shareholders have the same voting rights as other holders of the Company's Common Shares. As discussed elsewhere in this Annual Report, LMM has certain additional rights as the lender under the LMM Facility. In addition, the Company has granted HCI the right to nominate one person to be appointed to the board of directors of the Company. John Copelyn is HCI's nominee to the board of directors.

We are aware of the following changes in the Company's Major Shareholders over the past three years:

As of May 31, 2017, BlackRock, Inc. (**BlackRock**) reported as beneficially owning 12.4% of the Company's Common Shares. However, as of June 30, 2018, BlackRock reported as no longer being a Major Shareholder of the Company.

As of December 31, 2017, Donald Smith & Co., Inc. reported as beneficially owning 8.99% of the Company's Common Shares. However, such number of shares would currently represent less than 5% of the Company's common shares.

As of December 31, 2015, Genesis Asset Managers, LLP (**Genesis**) reported as beneficially owning 7.91% of the Company's Common Shares. However, as of December 31, 2016, Genesis no longer reported as being a Major Shareholder of the Company.

Based on information available to the Company, as of August 31, 2018, approximately 42.94% of the Company's outstanding Common Shares were beneficially owned in the United States, by approximately 14,181 holders with U.S. addresses.



**B. Related Party Transactions**

For purposes of this section, a Related Party means (a) enterprises that directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, control or are controlled by, or are under common control with, the company; (b) associates; (c) individuals owning, directly or indirectly, an interest in the voting power of the company that gives them significant influence over the company, and close members of any such individual's family; (d) key management personnel, that is, those persons having authority and responsibility for planning, directing and controlling the activities of the company, including directors and senior management of companies and close members of such individuals' families; and (e) enterprises in which a substantial interest in the voting power is owned, directly or indirectly, by any person described in (c) or (d) or over which such a person is able to exercise significant influence. Shareholders beneficially owning a 10% interest in the voting power of the Company are presumed to have a significant influence on the Company for purposes of this disclosure.

Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries has made any loan or guarantee in favor of any Related Party, nor has any Related Party been indebted to the Company or its subsidiaries, since September 1, 2017.

Neither the Company nor any of its subsidiaries is a party to any transactions since September 1, 2017 or any presently proposed transactions involving a Related Party, which transactions are material to the Company or the Related Party or are unusual in their nature or conditions, except as follows or as described elsewhere in this Annual Report:

- (1) LMM, a Major Shareholder, is the lender to the Company pursuant to the LMM Facility, as amended and restated, and was a party to the PPA prior to the PPA being terminated. The transactions between the Company and LMM are more fully described elsewhere in this Annual Report. LMM purchased 20,000,000 units in the Company's May 2018 public offering of units.
- (2) Franklin Advisors, Inc., a Major Shareholder, subscribed on behalf of certain funds for \$8 million of the principal amount of convertible notes issued by the Company on June 30, 2017. Based on information provided to the Company as of November 15, 2018 by Franklin Advisors, Inc., the Company believes that Franklin Advisors, Inc. continues to hold such notes. Transactions relating to the convertible notes are more fully described elsewhere in this Annual Report. In addition, Franklin Advisors, Inc. purchased 18,718,195 units in the Company's May 2018 public offering of units.
- (3) HCI became a Major Shareholder as a result of its participation a private placement of units in May 2018 and the Company's concurrent public offering of units. HCI purchased 15,090,999 units in the private placement and 24,909,000 units in the public offering. Pursuant to the private placement, HCI's nominee, John Copelyn, was appointed to the Company's board of directors. Such transactions are more fully described elsewhere in this Annual Report.
- (4) Compensatory matters relating to the Company's directors and executive officers are described in Item 6 of this Annual Report.

**C. Interests of Experts and Counsel**

Not applicable.

---

## ITEM 8. FINANCIAL INFORMATION

### A. Consolidated Statements and Other Financial Information

See the audited consolidated financial statements listed in Item 18 hereof and filed as part of this Annual Report. These financial statements include the consolidated balance sheets as at August 31, 2018 and 2017 and the statements of operations and cash flows for the three years ended August 31, 2018.

These consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with IFRS as issued by the IASB. The consolidated financial statements have been prepared under the historical cost convention.

### Legal Proceedings

On August 28, 2018 the Company received a summons issued by Africa Wide in the High Court of South Africa whereby Africa Wide, formerly the holder of a 17.1% interest in Maseve, has instituted legal proceedings in South Africa against the Company's wholly owned subsidiary, PTM RSA, RBPlat and Maseve ("**Defendants**") in relation to the Maseve Sale Transaction. See Item 5.A. Operating results - Maseve Sale to Royal Bafokeng Platinum. Africa Wide is seeking to set aside the Maseve Sale Transaction, alternatively is seeking that Africa Wide be paid the "true value" of its 17.1% shareholding in Maseve, to be determined at the time prior to the implementation of stage one of the Maseve Sale Transaction. Africa Wide avers that (i) pursuant to the term sheet pertaining to the Maseve Sale Transaction the Defendants disposed of Maseve's main asset (allegedly the plant) without Africa Wide's consent as required under the Maseve shareholders agreement; (ii) such disposal significantly devalued its shares in Maseve which (iii) resulted in the disposal of Africa Wide's shares in Maseve through a drag-along provision in Maseve's constitutional documents and (iv) Africa Wide did not have an election to refuse to dispose of its shareholding. While both the Company and RBPlat believe, and have been so advised by their respective legal counsel, that the Africa Wide action is factually and legally defective, no assurance can be provided that the Company will prevail in this action.

### Dividend Policy

We have not declared any dividends since incorporation and do not anticipate doing so in the foreseeable future. The following restrictions could prevent the Company from paying dividends or distributions:

The exchange controls of the Government of South Africa. See Item 4.B. South African Regulatory Framework;

In 2012, the Government of South Africa replaced the longstanding secondary tax on corporations with a dividend tax levied on shareholders. Before the new dividend tax became law, secondary tax on corporations had been levied at a rate of 10% on all dividends declared by companies resident in South Africa. The current rate of dividends tax is 20%. Under an existing tax treaty between Canada and South Africa, the effective rate under the new dividend tax in South Africa on dividends paid from PTM RSA to the Company will be 5% of the gross amount of dividends, provided the Company continues to hold at least 10% of the capital of PTM RSA. Dividend taxes are to be withheld by corporations in South Africa on behalf of shareholders and remitted to the South African Revenue Service; and

The LMM Facility specifies that the Company may not declare and pay dividends during the term of the LMM Facility, except with the prior written consent of LMM.

The Company has no current dividend or distribution policy and has no present intention to change its dividend or distribution policy, as it anticipates that all available funds will be invested to finance the growth of its business. The Company's directors will determine if and when dividends should be declared and paid in the future based on the Company's financial position at the relevant time.

## B. Significant Changes

There have been no significant changes since August 31, 2018, except as otherwise discussed herein.

## ITEM 9. THE OFFER AND LISTING

### A. Offer and Listing Details

There is no offer associated with this Annual Report.

### Trading History

The following table sets forth the high and low market prices for the Company's Common Shares on the TSX and on the NYSE American for each full quarterly period within the two most recent fiscal years ended August 31, 2018 and any subsequent period:

PERIOD	TSX HIGH CDN\$	TSX LOW CDN\$	NYSE AMERICAN HIGH USD\$	NYSE AMERICAN LOW USD\$
<b>2018</b>				
Fourth Quarter	0.17	0.12	0.13	0.10
Third Quarter	0.45	0.14	0.35	0.11
Second Quarter	0.72	0.36	0.58	0.28
First Quarter	0.89	0.40	0.72	0.32
<b>2017</b>				
Fourth Quarter	1.66	0.64	1.23	0.51
Third Quarter	2.41	1.42	1.81	1.03
Second Quarter	3.19	1.89	2.45	1.40
First Quarter	3.97	1.89	3.08	1.40

The following table sets forth the high and low market prices of the Company's Common Shares for the five most recent fiscal years ended August 31, 2018:

YEARS ENDING AUG. 31	TSX HIGH CDN\$	TSX LOW CDN\$	NYSE AMERICAN HIGH USD\$	NYSE AMERICAN LOW USD\$
2018	0.89	0.12	0.72	0.10
2017	3.97	0.64	3.08	0.51
2016 <sup>(1)</sup>	5.25	1.35	4.04	1.00
2015	1.19	0.32	1.08	0.24

YEARS ENDING AUG. 31	TSX HIGH CDN\$	TSX LOW CDN\$	NYSE AMERICAN HIGH USD\$	NYSE AMERICAN LOW USD\$
2014	1.49	0.97	1.37	0.99

**Notes:**

- (1) Effective January 28, 2016 the Company's Common Shares were consolidated on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10). All information regarding the issued and outstanding Common Shares, options and weighted average number and per share information has been retrospectively restated to reflect the ten to one consolidation.

The following table sets forth the high and low market prices for the most recent six months:

MONTH	TSX HIGH CDN\$	TSX LOW CDN\$	NYSE AMERICAN HIGH USD\$	NYSE AMERICAN LOW USD\$
October 2018	0.25	0.17	0.18	0.13
September 2018	0.25	0.14	0.19	0.10
August 2018	0.16	0.12	0.12	0.09
July 2018	0.16	0.13	0.12	0.10
June 2018	0.17	0.12	0.13	0.08
May 2018	0.26	0.14	0.20	0.11

The closing price of the Common Shares on November 29, 2018 was C\$0.21 on the TSX and \$0.1585 on the NYSE American.

There have been no trading suspensions in the prior three years.

**B. Plan of Distribution**

Not applicable.

**C. Markets**

The Common Shares are listed on the TSX under the symbol PTM and on the NYSE American under the symbol PLG.

**D. Selling Shareholders**

Not applicable.

**E. Dilution**

Not applicable.

**F. Expenses of the Issue**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 10. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION****A. Share Capital**

Not applicable.

**B. Memorandum and Articles of Association****Incorporation**

The Company was formed by way of an amalgamation of Platinum Group Metals Ltd. and New Millennium Metals Corporation on February 18, 2002 under the *Company Act* (British Columbia) pursuant to an order of the Supreme Court of British Columbia. The Company was transitioned to the BCBCA on January 25, 2005. the Company's British Columbia incorporation number is BC0642278.

**Objects and Purposes**

Neither the Notice of Articles nor the Articles of the Company contains a limitation on objects and purposes.

**Directors**

Part 17 of the Articles deals with the directors' involvement in transactions in which they have an interest. Article 17.2 provides that a director who holds a disclosable interest in a contract or transaction into which the Company has entered or proposes to enter is not entitled to vote on any directors' resolution to approve that contract or transaction, unless all the directors have a disclosable interest in that contract or transaction, in which case any or all of those directors may vote on such resolution.

Pursuant to the BCBCA, a director does not have a disclosable interest in a contract or transaction merely because the contract or transaction relates to the remuneration of the director in that person's capacity as a director of the Company.

Part 8 of the Articles deals with borrowing powers. The Company, if authorized by the directors, may: (i) borrow money in the manner and amount, on the security, from the sources and on the terms and conditions that they consider appropriate; (ii) issue bonds, debentures and other debt obligations either outright or as security for any liability or obligation of the Company or any other person and at such discounts or premiums and on such other terms as they consider appropriate; (iii) guarantee the repayment of money by any other person or the performance of any obligation of any other person; and (iv) mortgage, charge (whether by way of specific or floating charge), grant a security interest in, or give other security on, the whole or any part of the present and future assets and undertaking of the Company.

**Qualifications of Directors**

The Articles do not specify a retirement age for directors.

Directors are not required to own any Common Shares of the Company.

Section 124 of the BCBCA provides that an individual is not qualified to become or act as a director of a company if that individual is:

---



1. under the age of 18 years;
2. found by a court, in Canada or elsewhere, to be incapable of managing the individual's own affairs;
3. an undischarged bankrupt; or
4. convicted in or out of British Columbia of an offence in connection with the promotion, formation or management of a corporation or unincorporated business, or of an offence involving fraud, unless:
  - a. the court orders otherwise;
  - b. 5 years have elapsed since the last to occur of:
    - i. the expiration of the period set for suspension of the passing of sentence without a sentence having been passed;
    - ii. the imposition of a fine;
    - iii. the conclusion of the term of any imprisonment; and
    - iv. the conclusion of the term of any probation imposed; or
  - c. a pardon was granted or issued, or a record suspension ordered, under the *Criminal Records Act* (Canada) and the pardon or record suspension, as the case may be, has not been revoked or ceased to have effect.

A director who ceases to be qualified to act as a director of a company must promptly resign.

Section 120 of the BCBCA provides that every company must have at least one director, and a public company must have at least three directors.

### **Rights, Preference and Restrictions**

All of the authorized shares of Common Stock are of the same class and, once issued, rank equally as to dividends, voting powers, and participation in assets and in all other respects, on liquidation, dissolution or winding up of the Company, whether voluntary or involuntary, or any other distribution of its assets among its stockholders for the purpose of winding up its affairs after the Company have paid out its liabilities. The issued shares of Common Stock are not subject to call or assessment rights or any pre-emptive or conversion rights. The stockholders are entitled to one vote for each share on all matters to be voted on by the stockholders. There are no provisions for redemption, purchase for cancellation, surrender or sinking funds, and there are no provisions discriminating against any existing or prospective holder of Common Shares as a result of such shareholder owning a substantial number of Common Shares.

The rights of stockholders may be altered only with the approval of the holders of 2/3 or more of the Common Stock voted at a meeting of our stockholders called and held in accordance with our Articles and applicable law.

### **Shareholder Meetings**

The BCBCA provides that: (i) a general meeting of shareholders must be held in British Columbia, unless otherwise provided in the Company's Articles (and the Company's Articles provide that a meeting of shareholders may be held in or outside of British Columbia as determined by a resolution of the directors); (ii) the Company must hold an annual

general meeting of shareholders not later than 15 months after the last preceding annual general meeting and once in every calendar year; (iii) for the purpose of determining shareholders entitled to receive notice of or vote at a meeting of shareholders, the directors may set a date as the record date for that determination, provided that such date shall not precede by more than 2 months (or, in the case of a general meeting requisitioned by shareholders under the BCBCA, by more than 4 months) or be less than 21 days before the date on which the meeting is to be held; (iv) a quorum for the transaction of business at a meeting of shareholders of the Company is the quorum established by the Articles (and the Company's Articles provide that the quorum for the transaction of business at a meeting of shareholders is two persons who are, or who represent by proxy, shareholders who, in the aggregate, hold at least 5% of the issued shares entitled to be voted at the meeting); (v) the holders of not less than five percent of the issued shares entitled to vote at a meeting may requisition the directors to call a meeting of shareholders for the purpose of transacting any business that may be transacted at a general meeting; and (vi) the Supreme Court of British Columbia (the "Court") may, on its own motion or on the application of the Company, upon the application of a director or the application of a shareholder entitled to vote at the meeting: (a) order that a meeting of shareholders be called, held and conducted in a manner that the Court considers appropriate; and (b) give directions it considers necessary as to the call, holding and conduct of the meeting.

---

**Limitations on Ownership of Securities**

Except as provided in the *Investment Canada Act*, there are no limitations specific to the rights of non-Canadians to hold or vote the Common Shares under the laws of Canada or British Columbia or in the Company's charter documents. See Exchange Controls below in this Annual Report for a discussion of the principal features of the Investment Canada Act for non-Canadian residents proposing to acquire the Common Shares.

**Change in Control**

There are no provisions in the Articles or charter documents that would have the effect of delaying, deferring or preventing a change in the control of the Company, or that would operate with respect to any proposed merger, acquisition or corporate restructuring involving its company or any of its subsidiaries.

**Ownership Threshold**

There are no provisions in ourthe Articles requiring share ownership to be disclosed. Securities legislation in Canada requires that shareholder ownership (as well as ownership of an interest in, or right or obligation associated with, a related financial instrument of a security of the Company) must be disclosed once a person beneficially owns or has control or direction over, directly or indirectly, securities of a reporting issuer carrying more than 10% of the voting rights attached to all the reporting issuer's outstanding voting securities. This threshold is higher than the 5% threshold under U.S. securities legislation at which stockholders must report their share ownership.

**Changes to Capital**

There are no conditions imposed by the Articles governing changes in the rights of holders of Common Shares where such conditions are more significant than is required by the laws of British Columbia.

**Description of Capital Structure**

The rights of the Company's shareholders are also affected by the Shareholder Rights Plan, as defined and described below. The Shareholder Rights Plan is governed by the Shareholder Rights Plan Agreement between the Company and Computershare Investor Services Inc. dated July 9, 2012.

the Company's authorized share structure consists of an unlimited number of Common Shares without par value, of which 291,259,110 Common Shares were issued and outstanding as of the date of filing of this Annual Report. All of the issued Common Shares are fully paid. The Company does not own any of its Common Shares.

---

On July 10, 2012, the Company announced that its board of directors had approved the adoption of a shareholder rights plan dated July 9, 2012 (the **Shareholder Rights Plan**) subject to shareholder approval, which was received at the Company's annual general meeting held on January 8, 2013 and which shareholder approval was renewed at the Company's Annual General Meeting held on February 26, 2016. The Shareholders Rights Plan will continue in force up to the end of the Company's third annual general meeting of shareholders following the shareholder approval obtained on February 26, 2016, subject to earlier expiry in the event of (i) the redemption of the shareholder rights; or (ii) the exchange of the shareholder rights for debt or equity securities or assets (or a combination thereof), all as more particularly set out in the Shareholder Rights Plan.

The Company's management considers its current market valuation to be in contrast to the advancement of the Company and its business. As a result, the board of directors undertook a review to consider the need for a shareholder rights plan. The Shareholder Rights Plan is not intended to prevent or discourage a fair bid for the Company. The purpose of the Shareholder Rights Plan is to provide shareholders and the Company's board of directors with adequate time to consider and evaluate any unsolicited bid made for the Company, to provide the board of directors with adequate time to identify, develop and negotiate value-enhancing alternatives, if considered appropriate, to any such unsolicited bid, to encourage the fair treatment of shareholders in connection with any take-over bid for the Company and to ensure that any proposed transaction is in the best interests of the Company's shareholders.

The rights issued under the Shareholder Rights Plan will become exercisable only if a person, together with its affiliates, associates and joint actors, acquires or announces its intention to acquire beneficial ownership of shares which when aggregated with its current holdings, total 20% or more of the Company's outstanding Common Shares (determined in the manner set out in the Shareholder Rights Plan), other than by a Permitted Bid or Shareholder Endorsed Insider Bid (in each case as described in the Shareholder Rights Plan). Permitted Bids must be made by way of a take-over bid circular prepared in compliance with applicable securities laws and, among other conditions, must remain open for 60 days. A Shareholder Endorsed Insider Bid is a take-over bid made by a bidder who together with its affiliates or associates and joint actors has beneficial ownership of 10% or more of the voting securities of the Company, by way of take-over bid circular to all shareholders, and in respect of which, among other things, more than 50% of the Common Shares held by shareholders have been tendered to the take-over bid at the time of first take-up under the take-over bid and the date of such first take-up occurs not later than the 120<sup>th</sup> calendar day following the date on which the take-over bid is commenced. A Shareholder Endorsed Insider Bid is not required to be open for a minimum period of time beyond the 35 days required under applicable securities law.

In the event that a take-over bid does not meet the Permitted Bid or Shareholder Endorsed Insider Bid requirements of the Shareholder Rights Plan, the rights will entitle shareholders, other than any shareholder or shareholders making the take-over bid, to purchase additional Common Shares of the Company at a substantial discount to the market price of the Common Shares at that time.

### **C. Material Contracts**

Neither the Company nor its subsidiaries has been a party within the two years immediately preceding the publication of this Annual Report to a contract that is material to the Company, except for (i) contracts entered into in the ordinary course of business, and (ii) contracts discussed elsewhere in this Annual Report.

---

#### **D. Exchange Controls**

Canada has no system of exchange controls. There are no Canadian governmental laws, decrees, or regulations relating to restrictions on the repatriation of capital or earnings of the Company to nonresident investors. There are no laws in Canada or exchange control restrictions affecting the remittance of dividends, profits, interest, royalties and other payments by the Company to non-resident holders of the Common Stock, except as discussed below under "Item 10.E. Taxation."

There are no limitations under the laws of Canada or in the organizing documents of the Company on the right of foreigners to hold or vote securities of the Company, except that the *Investment Canada Act* may require that a non-Canadian not acquire control of the Company without prior review and approval by the Minister of Innovation, Science and Economic Development. The acquisition of one-third or more of the voting shares of the Company would give rise a rebuttable presumption of the acquisition of control, and the acquisition of more than fifty percent of the voting shares of the Company would be deemed to be an acquisition of control. In addition, the *Investment Canada Act* provides the Canadian government with broad discretionary powers in relation to national security to review and potentially prohibit, condition or require the divestiture of, any investment in the Company by a non-Canadian, including non-control level investments. "Non-Canadian" generally means an individual who is neither a Canadian citizen nor a permanent resident of Canada within the meaning of the *Immigration and Refugee Protection Act* (Canada) who has been ordinarily resident in Canada for not more than one year after the time at which he or she first became eligible to apply for Canadian citizenship, or a corporation, partnership, trust or joint venture that is ultimately controlled by non-Canadians.

#### **E. Taxation**

##### **Canadian Federal Income Tax Consequences**

The following is, as of the date hereof, a summary of the principal Canadian federal income tax considerations under *Income Tax Act* (Canada) (the **Tax Act**) and the regulations thereunder (the **Regulations**) generally applicable to a beneficial holder of Common Stock who, at all relevant times, for the purposes of the Tax Act, deals at arm's length with the Company, is not affiliated with the Company, holds such Common Stock as capital property, is neither resident nor deemed to be resident in Canada, does not use or hold, and will not be deemed to use or hold, Common Stock in a business carried on in Canada, is a resident of the United States for purposes of the Canada-United States Income Tax Convention (1980) (the **Canada-U.S. Tax Convention**), and is a qualifying person within the meaning of the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention (each, a **US Resident Holder**). In some circumstances, persons deriving amounts through fiscally transparent entities (including limited liability companies) may be entitled to benefits under the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention. US Resident Holders are urged to consult their own tax advisors to determine their entitlement to benefits under the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention based on their particular circumstances.

Common Stock will generally be considered to be capital property to a US Resident Holder unless the US Resident Holder holds or uses the Common Stock or is deemed to hold or use the Common Stock in the course of carrying on a business of trading or dealing in securities or has acquired them or deemed to have acquired them in a transaction or transactions considered to be an adventure in the nature of trade.

This summary does not apply to a US Resident Holder (a) that is a financial institution for purposes of the mark to market rules contained in the Tax Act; (b) an interest in which is or would constitute a tax shelter investment as defined in the Tax Act; (c) that is a specified financial institution as defined in the Tax Act; (d) that is a corporation that does not deal at arm's length for purposes of the Tax Act with a corporation resident in Canada and that is or becomes as part of a transaction or event or series of transactions or events that includes the acquisition of the Common Stock, controlled by a non-resident corporation for the purposes of the foreign affiliate dumping rules in Section 212.3 of the Tax Act; (e) that reports its Canadian tax results in a currency other than Canadian currency, all as defined in the Tax Act; (f) that is exempt from tax under the Tax Act; or (g) that has entered into, or will enter into,

a synthetic disposition arrangement or a derivative forward agreement with respect to the Common Stock, as those terms are defined in the Tax Act. Such US Resident Holders should consult their own tax advisors with respect to their holding of Common Stock.

---

Special considerations, which are not discussed in this summary, may apply to a US Resident Holder that is an insurer that carries on an insurance business in Canada and elsewhere or an authorized foreign bank (as defined in the Tax Act). Such US Resident Holders should consult their own advisors.

This summary does not address the deductibility of interest by a US Resident Holder who has borrowed money or otherwise incurred debt in connection with the acquisition of Common Stock.

This summary is based upon the current provisions of the Tax Act and the Regulations in force as of the date hereof, specific proposals to amend the Tax Act and the Regulations (the **Tax Proposals**) which have been announced by or on behalf the Minister of Finance (Canada) prior to the date hereof, the current provisions of the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention, and counsel's understanding of the current published administrative policies and assessing practices of the Canada Revenue Agency (the **CRA**). This summary assumes that the Tax Proposals will be enacted in the form proposed and does not take into account or anticipate any other changes in law, whether by way of judicial, legislative or governmental decision or action, nor does it take into account provincial, territorial or foreign income tax legislation or considerations, which may differ from the Canadian federal income tax considerations discussed herein. No assurances can be given that the Tax Proposals will be enacted as proposed or at all, or that legislative, judicial or administrative changes will not modify or change the statements expressed herein.

This summary is not exhaustive of all possible Canadian federal income tax considerations applicable to the holding of Common Stock. This summary is of a general nature only and is not intended to be, nor should it be construed to be, legal or income tax advice to any particular US Resident Holder. US Resident Holders should consult their own income tax advisors with respect to the tax consequences applicable to them based on their own particular circumstances.

#### ***Amounts Determined in Canadian Dollars***

For purposes of the Tax Act, all amounts relating to the Common Stock must be expressed in Canadian dollars, including cost, adjusted cost base, proceeds of disposition, and dividends, and amounts denominated in U.S. dollars must be converted to Canadian dollars using single daily exchange rate published by the Bank of Canada on the particular date the particular amount arose, or such other rate of exchange as may be accepted by the CRA. US Resident Holders may therefore realize additional income or gain by virtue of changes in foreign exchange rates, and are advised to consult with their own tax advisors in this regard. Currency tax issues are not discussed further in this summary.

#### ***Taxation of Dividends***

Subject to an applicable international tax treaty or convention, dividends paid or credited, or deemed to be paid or credited, to a non-resident of Canada on the Common Stock will be subject to Canadian withholding tax under the Tax Act at the rate of 25% of the gross amount of the dividend. Such rate is generally reduced under the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention to 15% if the beneficial owner of such dividend is a US Resident Holder. The rate of withholding tax is further reduced to 5% if the beneficial owner of such dividend is a US Resident Holder that is a company that owns, directly or indirectly, at least 10% of the voting stock of the Company. In addition, under the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention, dividends may be exempt from such Canadian withholding tax if paid to certain US Resident Holders that are qualifying religious, scientific, literary, educational, or charitable tax exempt organizations or qualifying trusts, companies, organizations, or arrangements operated exclusively to administer or provide pension, retirement, or employee benefits or benefits for the self-employed under one or more funds or plans established to provide pension or retirement benefits or other employee benefits that are exempt from tax in the United States and that have complied with specific administrative procedures.





***Disposition of Common Stock***

A US Resident Holder will not be subject to tax under the Tax Act in respect of any capital gain realized by such US Resident Holder on a disposition of Common Stock, unless the Common Stock constitute taxable Canadian property (as defined in the Tax Act) of the US Resident Holder at the time of the disposition and are not treaty-protected property (as defined in the Tax Act) of the US Resident Holder at the time of the disposition.

Generally, as long as the Common Stock is then listed on a designated stock exchange (which currently includes the TSX and the NYSE American), the Common Stock will not constitute taxable Canadian property of a US Resident Holder, unless at any time during the 60 month period immediately preceding the disposition the following two conditions are met concurrently: (a) the US Resident Holder, persons with which the US Resident Holder does not deal at arm's length, partnerships whose members include, either directly or indirectly through one or more partnerships, the US Resident Holder or persons which do not deal at arm's length with the US Resident Holder, or any combination of them, owned 25% or more of the issued shares of any class or series of shares of the capital stock of the Company, and (b) more than 50% of the fair market value of the Common Stock was derived directly or indirectly, from one or any combination of real or immovable property situated in Canada, Canadian resource properties, timber resource properties (each as defined in the Tax Act), and options in respect of or interests in, or for civil law rights in, any such property (whether or not such property exists).

In the case of a US Holder, the Common Stock of such US Holder will generally constitute treaty-protected property for purposes of the Tax Act unless the value of the Common Stock is derived principally from real property situated in Canada. For this purpose, real property has the meaning that term has under the laws of Canada and includes any option or similar right in respect thereof and usufruct of real property, rights to explore for or to exploit mineral deposits, sources and other natural resources and rights to amounts computed by reference to the amount or value of production from such resources.

***Taxation of Capital Gains and Losses***

If the Common Stock is taxable Canadian property of a US Resident Holder and is not treaty-protected property of that US Resident Holder at the time of its disposition, that US Resident Holder will realize a capital gain (or incur a capital loss) equal to the amount by which the proceeds of disposition in respect of the Common Stock exceed (or are exceeded by) the aggregate of the adjusted cost base to the Resident Holder of such Common Stock immediately before the disposition and any reasonable expenses incurred for the purpose of making the disposition.

---

Generally, one half of any capital gain (a taxable capital gain) realized by a US Resident Holder must be included in the US Resident Holder's income for the taxation year in which the disposition occurs. Subject to and in accordance with the provisions of the Tax Act, one half of any capital loss incurred by a Resident Holder (an allowable capital loss) must generally be deducted from taxable capital gains realized by the Resident Holder in the taxation year in which the disposition occurs. Allowable capital losses in excess of taxable capital gains for the taxation year of disposition generally may be carried back and deducted in the three preceding taxation years or carried forward and deducted in any subsequent year against taxable capital gains realized in such years, in the circumstances and to the extent provided in the Tax Act.

US Resident Holders whose Common Stock are taxable Canadian property should consult their own advisors.

### **United States Federal Income Tax Considerations**

The following is a general summary of certain material U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to a U.S. Holder (as defined herein) arising from and relating to the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock. This summary is for general information purposes only and does not purport to be a complete analysis or listing of all potential U.S. federal income tax considerations that may apply to a U.S. Holder arising from or relating to the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock. In addition, this summary does not take into account the individual facts and circumstances of any particular U.S. Holder that may affect the U.S. federal income tax consequences to such U.S. Holder, including specific tax consequences to a U.S. Holder under an applicable tax treaty. Accordingly, this summary is not intended to be, and should not be construed as, legal or U.S. federal income tax advice with respect to any U.S. Holder. This summary does not address the U.S. federal alternative minimum, U.S. federal estate and gift, U.S. state and local, and non-U.S. tax consequences to U.S. Holders of the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock. In addition, except as specifically set forth below, this summary does not discuss applicable income tax reporting requirements. Each prospective U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal, U.S. federal alternative minimum, U.S. federal estate and gift, U.S. state and local, and non-U.S. tax consequences relating to the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock.

No legal opinion from U.S. legal counsel or ruling from the Internal Revenue Service (the "**IRS**") has been requested, or will be obtained, regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences of the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock. This summary is not binding on the IRS, and the IRS is not precluded from taking a position that is different from, or contrary to, the positions taken in this summary. In addition, because the authorities on which this summary is based are subject to various interpretations, the IRS and the U.S. courts could disagree with one or more of the conclusions described in this summary.

### ***Scope of this Summary***

#### ***Authorities***

This summary is based on the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended (the "**Code**"), Treasury Regulations (whether final, temporary, or proposed), published rulings of the IRS, published administrative positions of the IRS, the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention, and U.S. court decisions that are available as of the date of this document. Any of the authorities on which this summary is based could be changed in a material and adverse manner at any time, and any such change could be applied on a retroactive or prospective basis, which could affect the U.S. federal income tax considerations described in this summary. Except as provided herein, this summary does not discuss the potential effects of any proposed legislation.

---

*U.S. Holders*

For purposes of this summary, the term "**U.S. Holder**" means a beneficial owner of shares of Common Stock that is for U.S. federal income tax purposes:

a citizen or individual resident of the United States;

a corporation (or other entity taxable as a corporation for U.S. federal income tax purposes) organized under the laws of the United States, any state thereof or the District of Columbia;

an estate whose income is subject to U.S. federal income taxation regardless of its source; or

a trust that (1) is subject to the primary supervision of a court within the U.S. and the control of one or more U.S. persons for all substantial decisions or (2) has a valid election in effect under applicable Treasury Regulations to be treated as a U.S. person.

*Non-U.S. Holders*

For purposes of this summary, a "**non-U.S. Holder**" is a beneficial owner of shares of Common Stock that is not a U.S. Holder or a partnership. This summary does not address the U.S. federal income tax consequences to non-U.S. Holders arising from or relating to the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock. Accordingly, a non-U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal, U.S. federal alternative minimum, U.S. federal estate and gift, U.S. state and local, and non-U.S. tax consequences (including the potential application of and operation of any income tax treaties) relating to the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock.

*U.S. Holders Subject to Special U.S. Federal Income Tax Rules Not Addressed*

This summary does not address the U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to U.S. Holders that are subject to special provisions under the Code, including, but not limited to U.S. Holders that: (a) are tax-exempt organizations, qualified retirement plans, individual retirement accounts, or other tax-deferred accounts; (b) are financial institutions, underwriters, insurance companies, real estate investment trusts, or regulated investment companies; (c) are broker-dealers, dealers, or traders in securities or currencies that elect to apply a mark-to-market accounting method; (d) have a "functional currency" other than the U.S. dollar; (e) own shares of Common Stock as part of a straddle, hedging transaction, conversion transaction, constructive sale, or other arrangement involving more than one position; (f) acquired shares of Common Stock in connection with the exercise of employee stock options or otherwise as compensation for services; (g) hold shares of Common Stock other than as a capital asset within the meaning of Section 1221 of the Code (generally, property held for investment purposes); (h) are subject to the alternative minimum tax; (i) are required to accelerate the recognition of any item of gross income with respect to shares of Common Stock as a result of such income being recognized on an applicable financial statement; or (j) own or have owned or will own (directly, indirectly, or by attribution) 10% or more of the total combined voting power of the outstanding shares of the Company. This summary also does not address the U.S. federal income tax considerations applicable to U.S. Holders who are: (a) U.S. expatriates or former long-term residents of the U.S.; (b) persons that have been, are, or will be a resident or deemed to be a resident in Canada for purposes of the Tax Act; (c) persons that use or hold, will use or hold, or that are or will be deemed to use or hold shares of Common Stock in connection with carrying on a business in Canada; (d) persons whose shares of Common Stock constitute "taxable Canadian property" under the Tax Act; or (e) persons that have a permanent establishment in Canada for the purposes of the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention. U.S. Holders that are subject to special provisions under the Code, including, but not limited to, U.S. Holders described immediately above, should consult their own tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal, U.S. federal alternative minimum, U.S. federal estate and gift, U.S. state and local, and non-U.S. tax consequences relating to the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock.



In particular, it is noted that the Company may be or may become a "controlled foreign corporation" for U.S. federal income tax purposes, and therefore, if a U.S. Holder is a U.S. shareholder owning 10% or more of the Company's voting stock directly, indirectly and/or under the applicable attribution rules, the U.S. federal income tax consequences to such U.S. Holder of owning shares of Common Stock may be significantly different than those described below in several respects. If a U.S. Holder owns 10% or more of the Company's voting stock directly, indirectly and/or under the applicable attribution rules, such holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal income tax rules applicable to an investment in a controlled foreign corporation.

If an entity or arrangement that is classified as a partnership (or other "pass-through" entity) for U.S. federal income tax purposes holds shares of Common Stock, the U.S. federal income tax consequences to such entity and the partners (or other owners) of such entity generally will depend on the activities of the entity and the status of such partners (or owners). This summary does not address the tax consequences to any such entity or owner. Partners (or other owners) of entities or arrangements that are classified as partnerships or as "pass-through" entities for U.S. federal income tax purposes should consult their own tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences arising from and relating to the ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock.

### ***Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules***

#### ***PFIC Status of the Company***

If the Company were to constitute a passive foreign investment company under the meaning of Section 1297 of the Code (a **PFIC**, as defined below) for any year during a U.S. Holder's holding period, then certain potentially adverse rules may affect the U.S. federal income tax consequences to a U.S. Holder as a result of the acquisition, ownership and disposition of shares of Common Stock. Based on current business plans and financial expectations, the Company believes that it may be a PFIC for its current tax year ending August 31, 2019 and may be a PFIC in future tax years. No opinion of legal counsel or ruling from the IRS concerning the status of the Company as a PFIC has been obtained or is currently planned to be requested. The determination of whether any corporation was, or will be, a PFIC for a tax year depends, in part, on the application of complex U.S. federal income tax rules, which are subject to differing interpretations. In addition, whether any corporation will be a PFIC for any tax year depends on the assets and income of such corporation over the course of each such tax year and, as a result, cannot be predicted with certainty as of the date of this document. Accordingly, there can be no assurance that the IRS will not challenge any determination made by the Company (or any subsidiary of the Company) concerning its PFIC status. Each U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the PFIC status of the Company and each subsidiary of the Company.

In any year in which the Company is classified as a PFIC, a U.S. Holder will be required to file an annual report with the IRS containing such information as Treasury Regulations and/or other IRS guidance may require. In addition to penalties, a failure to satisfy such reporting requirements may result in an extension of the time period during which the IRS can assess a tax. U.S. Holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the requirements of filing such information returns under these rules, including the requirement to file an IRS Form 8621 annually.

---

The Company generally will be a PFIC if, for a tax year, (a) 75% or more of the gross income of the Company is passive income (the **PFIC income test**) or (b) 50% or more of the value of the Company's assets either produce passive income or are held for the production of passive income, based on the quarterly average of the fair market value of such assets (the **PFIC asset test**). Gross income generally includes all sales revenues less the cost of goods sold, plus income from investments and from incidental or outside operations or sources, and passive income generally includes, for example, dividends, interest, certain rents and royalties, certain gains from the sale of stock and securities, and certain gains from commodities transactions. Active business gains arising from the sale of commodities generally are excluded from passive income if substantially all of a foreign corporation's commodities are stock in trade or inventory, depreciable property used in a trade or business, or supplies regularly used or consumed in the ordinary course of its trade or business, and certain other requirements are satisfied.

For purposes of the PFIC income test and PFIC asset test described above, if the Company owns, directly or indirectly, 25% or more of the total value of the outstanding shares of another corporation, the Company will be treated as if it (a) held a proportionate share of the assets of such other corporation and (b) received directly a proportionate share of the income of such other corporation. In addition, for purposes of the PFIC income test and PFIC asset test described above, and assuming certain other requirements are met, passive income does not include certain interest, dividends, rents, or royalties that are received or accrued by the Company from certain related persons (as defined in Section 954(d)(3) of the Code) also organized in Canada, to the extent such items are properly allocable to the income of such related person that is not passive income.

Under certain attribution rules, if the Company is a PFIC, U.S. Holders will generally be deemed to own their proportionate share of the Company's direct or indirect equity interest in any company that is also a PFIC (a **Subsidiary PFIC**), and will generally be subject to U.S. federal income tax on their proportionate share of (a) any excess distributions, as described below, on the stock of a Subsidiary PFIC and (b) a disposition or deemed disposition of the stock of a Subsidiary PFIC by the Company or another Subsidiary PFIC, both as if such U.S. Holders directly held the shares of such Subsidiary PFIC. In addition, U.S. Holders may be subject to U.S. federal income tax on any indirect gain realized on the stock of a Subsidiary PFIC on the sale or disposition of shares of Common Stock. Accordingly, U.S. Holders should be aware that they could be subject to tax under the PFIC rules even if no distributions are received and no redemptions or other dispositions of shares of Common Stock are made.

#### *Default PFIC Rules Under Section 1291 of the Code*

If the Company is a PFIC for any tax year during which a U.S. Holder owns shares of Common Stock, the U.S. federal income tax consequences to such U.S. Holder of the acquisition, ownership, and disposition of shares of Common Stock will depend on whether and when such U.S. Holder makes an election to treat the Company and each Subsidiary PFIC, if any, as a qualified electing fund or **QEF** under Section 1295 of the Code (a **QEF Election**) or makes a mark-to-market election under Section 1296 of the Code (a **Mark-to-Market Election**). A U.S. Holder that does not make either a QEF Election or a Mark-to-Market Election will be referred to in this summary as a **Non-Electing U.S. Holder**.

---

A Non-Electing U.S. Holder will be subject to the rules of Section 1291 of the Code (described below) with respect to: (a) any gain recognized on the sale or other taxable disposition of shares of Common Stock; and (b) any excess distribution received on the shares of Common Stock. A distribution generally will be an excess distribution to the extent that such distribution (together with all other distributions received in the current tax year) exceeds 125% of the average distributions received during the three preceding tax years (or during a U.S. Holder's holding period for the shares of Common Stock, if shorter).

Under Section 1291 of the Code, any gain recognized on the sale or other taxable disposition of shares of Common Stock (including an indirect disposition of the stock of any Subsidiary PFIC), and any excess distribution received on shares of Common Stock or with respect to the stock of a Subsidiary PFIC, must be ratably allocated to each day in a Non-Electing U.S. Holder's holding period for the respective shares of Common Stock. The amount of any such gain or excess distribution allocated to the tax year of disposition or distribution of the excess distribution and to years before the entity became a PFIC, if any, would be taxed as ordinary income (and not eligible for certain preferred rates). The amounts allocated to any other tax year would be subject to U.S. federal income tax at the highest tax rate applicable to ordinary income in each such year, and an interest charge would be imposed on the tax liability for each such year, calculated as if such tax liability had been due in each such year. A Non-Electing U.S. Holder that is not a corporation must treat any such interest paid as personal interest, which is not deductible.

If the Company is a PFIC for any tax year during which a Non-Electing U.S. Holder holds shares of Common Stock, the Company will continue to be treated as a PFIC with respect to such Non-Electing U.S. Holder, regardless of whether the Company ceases to be a PFIC in one or more subsequent tax years. A Non-Electing U.S. Holder may terminate this deemed PFIC status by electing to recognize gain (which will be taxed under the rules of Section 1291 of the Code discussed above), but not loss, as if such shares of Common Stock were sold on the last day of the last tax year for which the Company was a PFIC.

#### *QEF Election*

A U.S. Holder that makes a timely and effective QEF Election for the first tax year in which the holding period of its shares of Common Stock begins generally will not be subject to the rules of Section 1291 of the Code discussed above with respect to its shares of Common Stock. A U.S. Holder that makes a timely and effective QEF Election will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on such U.S. Holder's pro rata share of (a) the net capital gain of the Company, which will be taxed as long-term capital gain to such U.S. Holder, and (b) the ordinary earnings of the Company, which will be taxed as ordinary income to such U.S. Holder. Generally, net capital gain is the excess of (a) net long-term capital gain over (b) net short-term capital loss, and ordinary earnings are the excess of (a) earnings and profits over (b) net capital gain. A U.S. Holder that makes a QEF Election will be subject to U.S. federal income tax on such amounts for each tax year in which the Company is a PFIC, regardless of whether such amounts are actually distributed to such U.S. Holder by the Company. However, for any tax year in which the Company is a PFIC and has no net income or gain, U.S. Holders that have made a QEF Election would not have any income inclusions as a result of the QEF Election. If a U.S. Holder that made a QEF Election has an income inclusion, such a U.S. Holder may, subject to certain limitations, elect to defer payment of current U.S. federal income tax on such amounts, subject to an interest charge. If such U.S. Holder is not a corporation, any such interest paid will be treated as personal interest, which is not deductible.

A U.S. Holder that makes a timely and effective QEF Election with respect to the Company generally (a) may receive a tax-free distribution from the Company to the extent that such distribution represents earnings and profits of the Company that were previously included in income by the U.S. Holder because of such QEF Election and (b) will adjust such U.S. Holder's tax basis in the shares of Common Stock to reflect the amount included in income or allowed as a tax-free distribution because of such QEF Election. In addition, a U.S. Holder that makes a QEF Election generally will recognize capital gain or loss on the sale or other taxable disposition of shares of Common Stock.





The procedure for making a QEF Election, and the U.S. federal income tax consequences of making a QEF Election, will depend on whether such QEF Election is timely. A QEF Election will be treated as timely if such QEF Election is made for the first year in the U.S. Holder's holding period for the shares of Common Stock in which the Company was a PFIC. A U.S. Holder may make a timely QEF Election by filing the appropriate QEF Election documents at the time such U.S. Holder files a U.S. federal income tax return for such year. If a U.S. Holder does not make a timely and effective QEF Election for the first year in the U.S. Holder's holding period for the shares of Common Stock, the U.S. Holder may still be able to make a timely and effective QEF Election in a subsequent year if such U.S. Holder meets certain requirements and makes a purging election to recognize gain (which will be taxed under the rules of Section 1291 of the Code discussed above) as if such shares of Common Stock were sold for their fair market value on the day the QEF Election is effective. If a U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election but does not make a purging election to recognize gain as discussed in the preceding sentence, then such U.S. Holder shall be subject to the QEF Election rules and shall continue to be subject to tax under the rules of Section 1291 discussed above with respect to its shares of Common Stock. If a U.S. Holder owns PFIC stock indirectly through another PFIC, separate QEF Elections must be made for the PFIC in which the U.S. Holder is a direct shareholder and the Subsidiary PFIC for the QEF rules to apply to both PFICs.

A QEF Election will apply to the tax year for which such QEF Election is timely made and to all subsequent tax years, unless such QEF Election is invalidated or terminated or the IRS consents to revocation of such QEF Election. If a U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election and, in a subsequent tax year, the Company ceases to be a PFIC, the QEF Election will remain in effect (although it will not be applicable) during those tax years in which the Company is not a PFIC. Accordingly, if the Company becomes a PFIC in another subsequent tax year, the QEF Election will be effective and the U.S. Holder will be subject to the QEF rules described above during any subsequent tax year in which the Company qualifies as a PFIC.

U.S. Holders should be aware that there can be no assurances that the Company will satisfy the record keeping requirements that apply to a QEF, or that the Company will supply U.S. Holders with information that such U.S. Holders are required to report under the QEF rules, in the event that the Company is a PFIC. Thus, U.S. Holders may not be able to make a QEF Election with respect to their shares of Common Stock. Each U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the availability of, and procedure for making, a QEF Election.

A U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election by attaching a completed IRS Form 8621, including a PFIC Annual Information Statement, to a timely filed United States federal income tax return. However, if the Company does not provide the required information with regard to the Company or any of its Subsidiary PFICs, U.S. Holders will not be able to make a QEF Election for such entity and will continue to be subject to the rules of Section 1291 of the Code discussed above that apply to Non-Electing U.S. Holders with respect to the taxation of gains and excess distributions.

#### *Mark-to-Market Election*

A U.S. Holder may make a Mark-to-Market Election only if the shares of Common Stock are marketable stock. The shares of Common Stock generally will be marketable stock if the shares of Common Stock are regularly traded on (a) a national securities exchange that is registered with the Securities and Exchange Commission, (b) the national market system established pursuant to section 11A of the Securities and Exchange Act of 1934, or (c) a foreign securities exchange that is regulated or supervised by a governmental authority of the country in which the market is located, provided that (i) such foreign exchange has trading volume, listing, financial disclosure, and surveillance requirements, and meets other requirements and the laws of the country in which such foreign exchange is located, together with the rules of such foreign exchange, ensure that such requirements are actually enforced and (ii) the rules of such foreign exchange effectively promote active trading of listed stocks. If such stock is traded on such a qualified exchange or other market, such stock generally will be regularly traded for any calendar year during which such stock is traded, other than in de minimis quantities, on at least 15 days during each calendar quarter. Each U.S. Holder

should consult its own tax advisor in this regard.

---

A U.S. Holder that makes a Mark-to-Market Election with respect to its shares of Common Stock generally will not be subject to the rules of Section 1291 of the Code discussed above with respect to such shares of Common Stock. However, if a U.S. Holder does not make a Mark-to-Market Election beginning in the first tax year of such U.S. Holder's holding period for the shares of Common Stock for which the Company is a PFIC and such U.S. Holder has not made a timely QEF Election, the rules of Section 1291 of the Code discussed above will apply to certain dispositions of, and distributions on, the shares of Common Stock.

A U.S. Holder that makes a Mark-to-Market Election will include in ordinary income, for each tax year in which the Company is a PFIC, an amount equal to the excess, if any, of (a) the fair market value of the shares of Common Stock, as of the close of such tax year over (b) such U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in such shares of Common Stock. A U.S. Holder that makes a Mark-to-Market Election will be allowed a deduction in an amount equal to the excess, if any, of (a) such U.S. Holder's adjusted tax basis in the shares of Common Stock, over (b) the fair market value of such shares of Common Stock (but only to the extent of the net amount of previously included income as a result of the Mark-to-Market Election for prior tax years).

A U.S. Holder that makes a Mark-to-Market Election generally also will adjust such U.S. Holder's tax basis in the shares of Common Stock to reflect the amount included in gross income or allowed as a deduction because of such Mark-to-Market Election. In addition, upon a sale or other taxable disposition of shares of Common Stock, a U.S. Holder that makes a Mark-to-Market Election will recognize ordinary income or ordinary loss (not to exceed the excess, if any, of (a) the amount included in ordinary income because of such Mark-to-Market Election for prior tax years over (b) the amount allowed as a deduction because of such Mark-to-Market Election for prior tax years). Losses that exceed this limitation are subject to the rules generally applicable to losses provided in the Code and Treasury Regulations.

A U.S. Holder makes a Mark-to-Market Election by attaching a completed IRS Form 8621 to a timely filed United States federal income tax return. A Mark-to-Market Election applies to the tax year in which such Mark-to-Market Election is made and to each subsequent tax year, unless the shares of Common Stock cease to be marketable stock or the IRS consents to revocation of such election. Each U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the availability of, and procedure for making, a Mark-to-Market Election.

Although a U.S. Holder may be eligible to make a Mark-to-Market Election with respect to the shares of Common Stock, no such election may be made with respect to the stock of any Subsidiary PFIC that a U.S. Holder is treated as owning, because such stock is not marketable. Hence, the Mark-to-Market Election will not be effective to avoid the application of the default rules of Section 1291 of the Code described above with respect to deemed dispositions of Subsidiary PFIC stock or excess distributions from a Subsidiary PFIC to its shareholder.

---

*Other PFIC Rules*

Under Section 1291(f) of the Code, the IRS has issued proposed Treasury Regulations that, subject to certain exceptions, would cause a U.S. Holder that had not made a timely QEF Election to recognize gain (but not loss) upon certain transfers of shares of Common Stock that would otherwise be tax-deferred (e.g., gifts and exchanges pursuant to corporate reorganizations). However, the specific U.S. federal income tax consequences to a U.S. Holder may vary based on the manner in which shares of Common Stock are transferred.

Certain additional adverse rules may apply with respect to a U.S. Holder if the Company is a PFIC, regardless of whether such U.S. Holder makes a QEF Election. For example, under Section 1298(b)(6) of the Code, a U.S. Holder that uses shares of Common Stock as security for a loan will, except as may be provided in Treasury Regulations, be treated as having made a taxable disposition of such shares of Common Stock.

Special rules also apply to the amount of foreign tax credit that a U.S. Holder may claim on a distribution from a PFIC. Subject to such special rules, foreign taxes paid with respect to any distribution in respect of stock in a PFIC are generally eligible for the foreign tax credit. The rules relating to distributions by a PFIC and their eligibility for the foreign tax credit are complicated, and a U.S. Holder should consult with its own tax advisors regarding the availability of the foreign tax credit with respect to distributions by a PFIC.

The PFIC rules are complex, and each U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the PFIC rules and how the PFIC rules may affect the U.S. federal income tax consequences of the acquisition, ownership, and disposition of shares of Common Stock.

***Ownership and Disposition of Shares of Common Stock to the Extent that the Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules Do Not Apply***

The following discussion is subject, in its entirety, to the rules described above under the heading "Passive Foreign Investment Company Rules".

*Distributions on Shares of Common Stock*

A U.S. Holder that receives a distribution, including a constructive distribution, with respect to an share of Common Stock will be required to include the amount of such distribution in gross income as a dividend (without reduction for any Canadian income tax withheld from such distribution) to the extent of the current or accumulated "earnings and profits" of the Company, as computed for U.S. federal income tax purposes. To the extent that a distribution exceeds the current and accumulated "earnings and profits" of the Company, such distribution will be treated first as a tax-free return of capital to the extent of a U.S. Holder's tax basis in the shares of Common Stock and thereafter as gain from the sale or exchange of such shares of Common Stock. (See "Sale or Other Taxable Disposition of Shares of Common Stock" below). However, the Company does not intend to maintain the calculations of its earnings and profits in accordance with U.S. federal income tax principles, and each U.S. Holder therefore should assume that any distribution by the Company with respect to the shares of Common Stock will constitute ordinary dividend income. Dividends received on shares of Common Stock will not be eligible for the "dividends received deduction". Subject to applicable limitations and provided the Company is eligible for the benefits of the Canada-U.S. Tax Convention or the shares of Common Stock are readily tradable on a United States securities market, dividends paid by the Company to non-corporate U.S. Holders, including individuals, generally will be eligible for the preferential tax rates applicable to long-term capital gains for dividends, provided certain holding period and other conditions are satisfied, including that the Company not be classified as a PFIC in the tax year of distribution or in the preceding tax year. If the Company is a PFIC, a dividend generally will be taxed to a U.S. Holder at ordinary income tax rates. The dividend rules are complex, and each U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisors regarding the application of such rules.



*Sale or Other Taxable Disposition of Shares of Common Stock*

Upon the sale or other taxable disposition of shares of Common Stock, a U.S. Holder generally will recognize capital gain or loss in an amount equal to the difference between the U.S. dollar value of cash received plus the fair market value of any property received and such U.S. Holder's tax basis in such shares of Common Stock sold or otherwise disposed of. A U.S. Holder's tax basis in shares of Common Stock generally will be such U.S. Holder's U.S. dollar cost for such shares of Common Stock. Gain or loss recognized on such sale or other disposition generally will be long-term capital gain or loss if, at the time of the sale or other disposition, the shares of Common Stock have been held for more than one year.

Preferential tax rates currently apply to long-term capital gain of a U.S. Holder that is an individual, estate, or trust. There are no preferential tax rates for long-term capital gain of a U.S. Holder that is a corporation. Deductions for capital losses are subject to significant limitations under the Code.

*Additional Considerations**Additional Tax on Passive Income*

Certain U.S. Holders that are individuals, estates or trusts (other than trusts that are exempt from tax) will be subject to a 3.8% tax on all or a portion of their "net investment income", which includes dividends on the shares of Common Stock, and net gains from the disposition of the shares of Common Stock. Special rules apply to PFICs. U.S. Holders that are individuals, estates or trusts should consult their own tax advisors regarding the applicability of this tax to any of their income or gains in respect of the shares of Common Stock.

*Receipt of Foreign Currency*

The amount of any distribution paid to a U.S. Holder in foreign currency, or on the sale, exchange or other taxable disposition of shares of Common Stock, generally will be equal to the U.S. dollar value of such foreign currency based on the exchange rate applicable on the date of receipt (regardless of whether such foreign currency is converted into U.S. dollars at that time). A U.S. Holder will have a tax basis in the foreign currency equal to its U.S. dollar value on the date of receipt. Any U.S. Holder who converts or otherwise disposes of the foreign currency after the date of receipt may have a foreign currency exchange gain or loss that would be treated as ordinary income or loss, and generally will be U.S. source income or loss for foreign tax credit purposes. Different rules apply to U.S. Holders who use the accrual method of tax accounting. Each U.S. Holder should consult its own U.S. tax advisors regarding the U.S. federal income tax consequences of receiving, owning, and disposing of foreign currency.

---

*Foreign Tax Credit*

Subject to the PFIC rules discussed above, a U.S. Holder that pays (whether directly or through withholding) Canadian income tax with respect to dividends paid on the shares of Common Stock generally will be entitled, at the election of such U.S. Holder, to receive either a deduction or a credit for such Canadian income tax. Generally, a credit will reduce a U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability on a dollar-for-dollar basis, whereas a deduction will reduce a U.S. Holder's income subject to U.S. federal income tax. This election is made on a year-by-year basis and applies to all foreign taxes paid (whether directly or through withholding) by a U.S. Holder during a year.

Complex limitations apply to the foreign tax credit, including the general limitation that the credit cannot exceed the proportionate share of a U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability that such U.S. Holder's "foreign source" taxable income bears to such U.S. Holder's worldwide taxable income. In applying this limitation, a U.S. Holder's various items of income and deduction must be classified, under complex rules, as either "foreign source" or "U.S. source". Generally, dividends paid by a foreign corporation should be treated as foreign source for this purpose. However, and subject to certain exceptions, a portion of the dividends paid by a foreign corporation will be treated as U.S. source income for U.S. foreign tax credit purposes, in proportion to its U.S. source earnings and profits, if U.S. persons own, directly or indirectly, 50 percent or more of the voting power or value of the foreign corporation's Common Shares. If a portion of any dividends paid with respect to the shares of Common Stock are treated as U.S. source income under these rules, it may limit the ability of a U.S. Holder to claim a foreign tax credit for Canadian withholding taxes imposed in respect of such dividend. In addition, the amount of a distribution with respect to the shares of Common Stock that is treated as a "dividend" may be lower for U.S. federal income tax purposes than it is for Canadian federal income tax purposes, resulting in a reduced foreign tax credit allowance to a U.S. Holder. With respect to gains recognized on the sale of stock of a foreign corporation by a U.S. Holder, such gains are generally treated as U.S. source for purposes of the foreign tax credit. These limitations are calculated separately with respect to specific categories of income. The foreign tax credit rules are complex, and each U.S. Holder should consult its own U.S. tax advisors regarding the foreign tax credit rules.

*Backup Withholding and Information Reporting*

Under U.S. federal income tax law and Treasury Regulations, certain categories of U.S. Holders must file information returns with respect to their investment in, or involvement in, a foreign corporation. For example, U.S. return disclosure obligations (and related penalties) are imposed on individuals who are U.S. Holders that hold certain specified foreign financial assets in excess of certain threshold amounts. The definition of specified foreign financial assets includes not only financial accounts maintained in foreign financial institutions, but also, unless held in accounts maintained by a financial institution, any stock or security issued by a non-U.S. person, any financial instrument or contract held for investment that has an issuer or counterparty other than a U.S. person and any interest in a non-U.S. entity. U.S. Holders may be subject to these reporting requirements unless their shares of Common Stock are held in an account at certain financial institutions. Penalties for failure to file certain of these information returns are substantial. U.S. Holders should consult their own tax advisors regarding the requirements of filing information returns, including the requirement to file an IRS Form 8938.

Payments made within the U.S. or by a U.S. payor or U.S. middleman, of dividends on, and proceeds arising from the sale or other taxable disposition of, shares of Common Stock will generally be subject to information reporting and backup withholding tax at the rate of 24% if a U.S. Holder (a) fails to furnish such U.S. Holder's correct U.S. taxpayer identification number (generally on IRS Form W-9), (b) furnishes an incorrect U.S. taxpayer identification number, (c) is notified by the IRS that such U.S. Holder has previously failed to properly report items subject to backup withholding tax, or (d) fails to certify, under penalty of perjury, that such U.S. Holder has furnished its correct U.S. taxpayer identification number and that the IRS has not notified such U.S. Holder that it is subject to backup withholding tax. However, certain exempt persons generally are excluded from these information reporting and

backup withholding rules. Backup withholding is not an additional tax. Any amounts withheld under the U.S. backup withholding tax rules will be allowed as a credit against a U.S. Holder's U.S. federal income tax liability, if any, or will be refunded, if such U.S. Holder furnishes required information to the IRS in a timely manner.

---



The discussion of reporting requirements set forth above is not intended to constitute an exhaustive description of all reporting requirements that may apply to a U.S. Holder. A failure to satisfy certain reporting requirements may result in an extension of the time period during which the IRS can assess a tax, and under certain circumstances, such an extension may apply to assessments of amounts unrelated to any unsatisfied reporting requirement. Each U.S. Holder should consult its own tax advisor regarding the information reporting and backup withholding rules.

**F. Dividends and Paying Agents**

Not applicable.

**G. Statement by Experts**

Not applicable.

**H. Documents on Display**

Additional information relating to the Company may be found on SEDAR, the system for electronic document analysis and retrieval, at [www.sedar.com](http://www.sedar.com) and on EDGAR, the SEC's electronic data gathering, analysis and retrieval database, at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

Additional information, including directors' and officers' remuneration and indebtedness, principal holders of the Company's securities and securities authorized for issuance under equity compensation plans, if applicable, is contained in the Company's information circular for its most recent annual meeting of shareholders.

Additional financial information is provided in the Company's Financial Statements and Management's Discussion and Analysis for the year ended August 31, 2018.

Copies of the above may be obtained, on the Company's website [www.platinumgroupmetals.net](http://www.platinumgroupmetals.net); on the SEDAR website at [www.sedar.com](http://www.sedar.com); on the SEC's EDGAR website at [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov); or by calling the Company's investor relations personnel at 604-899-5450.

**I. Subsidiary Information**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 11. QUANTITATIVE AND QUALITATIVE DISCLOSURES ABOUT MARKET RISK**

(a) Currency Risk

---

While the Company's financial statements are presented in U.S. dollars, the Company's functional currency is the Canadian dollar, the functional currency of the Company's subsidiaries is the South African Rand, and a significant portion of the Company's and its subsidiaries' expenses are incurred in Canadian dollars and South African Rand. Therefore, the Company is subject to currency risk with respect to changes in exchange rates among the U.S. dollar, Canadian dollar and South African Rand. The Company has not entered into any agreements or purchased any instruments to hedge its currency risks. A hypothetical 10% strengthening/weakening in the U.S. dollar versus the Canadian dollar and Rand would have given rise to a decrease/increase in net loss for the year ended August 31, 2018 of approximately \$6.8 million. For further information, see note 18 to the Company's financial statements.

(b) Interest Rate Risk

The Company's primary exposure to interest rate risk is through its borrowings under the LMM Facility, which bears interest at LIBOR plus 9.5%. At August 31, 2018, based on this exposure, an increase or decrease of 2% in the average interest rate would give rise to an increase/decrease of approximately \$ million on interest expense for the year ended August 31, 2018.

**ITEM 12. DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES OTHER THAN EQUITY SECURITIES**

Not applicable.

---

**PART II****ITEM 13. DEFAULTS, DIVIDEND ARREARAGES AND DELINQUENCIES**

Not applicable.

**ITEM 14. MATERIAL MODIFICATIONS TO THE RIGHTS OF SECURITY HOLDERS AND USE OF PROCEEDS**

Certain restrictions on the payment of dividends are described under Item 8.A.

**ITEM 15. CONTROLS AND PROCEDURES**

The Company maintains a set of disclosure controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed in filings made pursuant to both SEC and Canadian Securities Administrators requirements are recorded, processed, summarized and reported in the manner specified by the relevant securities laws applicable to the Company. Disclosure controls and procedures include, without limitation, controls and procedures designed to ensure that information required to be disclosed by an issuer in the reports that it files or submits under the applicable securities legislation is accumulated and communicated to the issuer's management, including its principal executive and principal financial officers, or persons performing similar functions, as appropriate to allow timely decisions regarding required disclosure. The Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer have evaluated the Company's disclosure controls and procedures as at August 31, 2018 through inquiry, review and testing, as well as by drawing upon their own relevant experience. The Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer have concluded that the Company's disclosure controls and procedures were effective as at August 31, 2018.

the Company's management, including the Chief Executive Officer and the Chief Financial Officer, is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal control over financial reporting, and evaluating the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as at each fiscal year end. Management has used the framework in Internal Control - Integrated Framework (2013) issued by the Committee of Sponsoring Organizations of the Treadway Commission (COSO) to evaluate the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting as at August 31, 2018. Based on this evaluation, management has concluded that the Company's internal controls over financial reporting was effective as at August 31, 2018.

***Changes in Internal Controls over Financial Reporting***

Management is responsible for establishing and maintaining adequate internal controls over financial reporting. Any system of internal control over financial reporting, no matter how well designed, has inherent limitations. Therefore, even those systems determined to be effective can provide only reasonable assurance with respect to financial statement preparation and presentation. There has been no change in the Company's internal control over financial reporting during the year ended August 31, 2018 that has materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, our internal control over financial reporting.

***Exemption from Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act***

Non-accelerated filers are exempt from Section 404(b) of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act, which generally requires public companies to provide an independent auditor attestation of management's assessment of the effectiveness of their internal control over financial reporting. The Company qualifies as a non-accelerated filer and therefore has not included an independent auditor attestation of management's assessment of the effectiveness of its internal control over financial reporting in this MD&A or in its audited annual consolidated financial statements for the year ended August 31, 2018.

---

**ITEM AUDIT COMMITTEE FINANCIAL EXPERT****16A.**

The board of directors has determined that there are two financial experts on the Company's Audit Committee: Iain McLean, director and Diana Walters, director. Mr. McLean has an M.B.A. from Harvard Business School and a B.Sc. (Eng.) in Mining from the Imperial College of Science and Technology (London, England). In addition to his education, Mr. McLean has gained relevant experience acting as the Chief Operating Officer of several private technology companies since 1995 and as the Vice President of Operations at Ballard Power Systems from 1993 to 1995. Ms. Walters has worked on the natural resources sector both as an investment banker and in operating roles. In addition, she gained extensive investment experience with both debt and equity through leadership roles at Credit Suisse, HSBC and other firms. Each of Mr. McLean and Ms. Walters is independent within the meaning of NYSE American listing standards.

**ITEM CODE OF ETHICS****16B.**

The Company has adopted a Code of Business Conduct and Ethics (the **Code of Conduct**) that applies to all of its directors, officers and employees, including the Chief Executive Officer and Chief Financial Officer. The Code of Conduct includes provisions covering conflicts of interest, ethical conduct, compliance with applicable government laws, rules and regulations, disclosure in reports and documents filed with, or submitted to, the SEC, reporting of violations of the Code of Conduct and accountability for adherence to the Code of Conduct. A copy of the Code of Conduct is posted on the Company's website, at [www.platinumgroupmetals.net](http://www.platinumgroupmetals.net).

The Company has not granted any waiver, including any implicit waiver, from a provision of the Code during the Company's most recently completed fiscal year ending August 31, 2018.

**ITEM PRINCIPAL ACCOUNTANT FEES AND SERVICES****16C.*****External Auditor Service Fees (By Category)***

The aggregate fees billed by the Company's current independent auditor, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP, during the fiscal years ended August 31, 2018 and 2017 are set forth below in \$:

	Year ended August 31, 2018 (\$)	Year ended August 31, 2017 (\$)
Audit Fees	324,828	263,242
Audit-Related Fees <sup>(1)</sup>	42,226	55,041
Tax Fees <sup>(2)</sup>	-	-
All Other Fees <sup>(3)</sup>	45,398	97,121
Total	412,512	415,404

**Notes:**

- (1) The aggregate fees billed for assurance and related services that are reasonably related to the performance of the audit or review of the Company's financial statements, which are not included under the heading Audit Fees.

- (2) The aggregate fees billed for professional services rendered for tax compliance, tax advice and tax planning, including restructuring advice.
- (3) The aggregate fees billed for products and services other than as set out under the headings Audit Fees, Audit Related Fees and Tax Fees.

### **Pre-Approval Policies**

The Audit Committee's pre-approval policies are described under Item 6.C. Board Practices.

### **ITEM EXEMPTIONS FROM THE LISTING STANDARDS FOR AUDIT COMMITTEES 16D.**

Not applicable.

### **ITEM PURCHASES OF EQUITY SECURITIES BY THE ISSUER AND AFFILIATED PURCHASERS 16E.**

There were no purchases of equity securities by us or by any affiliated purchaser during the period covered by this Annual Report.

### **ITEM CHANGE IN REGISTRANT'S CERTIFYING ACCOUNTANT 16F.**

None.

### **ITEM CORPORATE GOVERNANCE 16G.**

the Company's Common Shares are listed for trading on the NYSE American. Section 110 of the NYSE American Company Guide permits the NYSE American to consider the laws, customs and practices of foreign issuers in relaxing certain NYSE American listing criteria, and to grant exemptions from NYSE American listing criteria based on these considerations. A company seeking relief under these provisions is required to provide written certification from independent local counsel that the non-complying practice is not prohibited by home country law. A description of the significant ways in which the Company's governance practices differ from those followed by domestic companies pursuant to NYSE American standards is as follows:

*Shareholder Meeting Quorum Requirement:* The NYSE American minimum quorum requirement for a shareholder meeting is one-third of the outstanding shares of common stock. In addition, a company listed on NYSE American is required to state its quorum requirement in its bylaws. The Company's quorum requirement is set forth in its articles. The Company's articles provide that a quorum for the transaction of business at any shareholders' meetings is two persons who are, or who represent by proxy, shareholders who, in the aggregate, hold at least 5% of the issued shares entitled to be voted thereat. However, if there is only one shareholder entitled to vote at a meeting of shareholders, the quorum is one person who is, or who represents by proxy, that shareholder. If within one-half hour from the time set for the holding of a shareholders' meeting, a quorum is not present, a meeting convened by requisition of the shareholders shall be dissolved. In any other case a meeting shall stand adjourned to the same day in the next week at the same time and place; and, if a quorum is not present within one-half hour from the time appointed for the adjourned meeting, the persons present and being, or representing by proxy, one or more shareholders entitled to attend and vote at such meeting shall constitute a quorum.

*Proxy Delivery Requirement:* NYSE American requires the solicitation of proxies and delivery of proxy statements for all shareholder meetings, and requires that these proxies be solicited pursuant to a proxy statement that conforms to the proxy rules of the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. The Company is a foreign private issuer as defined in Rule 3b-4 under the U.S. Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the equity securities of the Company are accordingly exempt from the proxy rules set forth in Sections 14(a), 14(b), 14(c) and 14(f) of such Act. The

Company solicits proxies in accordance with applicable rules and regulations in Canada.

---

*Shareholder Approval Requirements:* NYSE American requires a listed company to obtain the approval of its shareholders for certain types of securities issuances, including private placements that may result in the issuance of Common Shares (or securities convertible into Common Shares) equal to 20% or more of presently outstanding shares for less than the greater of book or market value of the shares. In general, there is no such requirement under British Columbia law or under the policies of the Toronto Stock Exchange unless the transaction: materially affects control of the listed issuer; provides consideration to insiders in aggregate of 10% or greater of the market capitalization of the listed issuer, during any six-month period, and has not been negotiated at arm's length; or the transaction is a private placement for an aggregate number of listed securities issuable greater than 25% of the number of securities of the listed issuer which are outstanding, on a non-diluted basis, prior to the date of closing of the transaction where the price per security is less than the market price (as such term is defined under Toronto Stock Exchange policies) but within the discounts allowable under Toronto Stock Exchange policies. The Company will seek a waiver from NYSE American's shareholder approval requirements in circumstances where the securities issuance does not trigger such a requirement under British Columbia law or under the policies of the Toronto Stock Exchange.

The foregoing is consistent with the laws, customs and practices in Canada.

**ITEM MINE SAFETY DISCLOSURE**

**16H.**

The Company was not the operator, and did not have a subsidiary that was an operator, of a coal or other mine, as defined in Section 3 of the Federal Mine Safety and Health Act of 1977, in the United States during the year ended August 31, 2018.

---

**PART III**

**ITEM 17. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Not applicable

**ITEM 18. FINANCIAL STATEMENTS**

Following are the Company's Consolidated Financial Statements for the year ended August 31, 2018

---



**Platinum Group Metals Ltd.**

**Consolidated Financial Statements**

*(all amounts in thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)*

For the year ended August 31, 2018

Filed: November 29, 2018

---

## **Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm**

To the Shareholders and Board of Directors of Platinum Group Metals Ltd.

### ***Opinion on the financial statements***

We have audited the accompanying consolidated statements of financial position of Platinum Group Metals Ltd. and its subsidiaries, (together, the Company) as of August 31, 2018 and 2017, and the related consolidated statements of loss and comprehensive loss (income), changes in equity and cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended August 31, 2018, including the related notes (collectively referred to as the consolidated financial statements). In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of August 31, 2018 and 2017, and their financial performance and their cash flows for each of the three years in the period ended August 31, 2018 in conformity with International Financial Reporting Standards as issued by the International Accounting Standards Board (IFRS).

### ***Substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern***

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 1 to the consolidated financial statements, the Company has suffered recurring losses from operations and has significant amounts of debt payable without any current source of operating income. The Company also has a net capital deficiency that raises substantial doubt about its ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans in regard to these matters are also described in Note 1. The financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

### ***Basis for opinion***

These consolidated financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on the Company's consolidated financial statements based on our audits. We are a public accounting firm registered with the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States) (PCAOB) and are required to be independent with respect to the Company in accordance with the U.S. federal securities laws and the applicable rules and regulations of the Securities and Exchange Commission and the PCAOB.

We conducted our audits of these consolidated financial statements in accordance with the standards of the PCAOB. Those standards require that we plan and perform the audit to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the consolidated financial statements are free of material misstatement, whether due to error or fraud. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. As part of our audits we are required to obtain an understanding of internal control over financial reporting but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion.



Our audits included performing procedures to assess the risks of material misstatement of the consolidated financial statements, whether due to error or fraud, and performing procedures that respond to those risks. Such procedures included examining, on a test basis, evidence regarding the amounts and disclosures in the consolidated financial statements. Our audits also included evaluating the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall presentation of the consolidated financial statements. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

*(Signed) "PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP"*

**Chartered Professional Accountants**

Vancouver, Canada  
November 29, 2018

We have served as the Company's auditor since 2007.

---

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Consolidated Statements of Financial Position

(in thousands of United States Dollars)

	August 31, 2018	August 31, 2017
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>Current</b>		
Cash and cash equivalents	\$ 3,017	\$ 3,414
Restricted Cash Waterberg (Note 7)	126	-
Marketable Securities (Note 4)	7,084	-
Amounts receivable	863	2,058
Prepaid expenses	226	645
Asset held for sale (Note 6)	-	69,889
<b>Total current assets</b>	<b>11,316</b>	<b>76,006</b>
Performance bonds	70	79
Exploration and evaluation assets (Note 7)	29,406	22,900
Property, plant and equipment (Note 5)	1,057	1,543
<b>Total assets</b>	<b>\$ 41,849</b>	<b>\$ 100,528</b>
<b>LIABILITIES</b>		
<b>Current</b>		
Accounts payable and other liabilities	\$ 3,572	\$ 16,443
Loan payable (Note 8)	-	46,305
<b>Total current liabilities</b>	<b>3,572</b>	<b>62,748</b>
Loans payable (Note 8)	42,291	43,821
Convertible notes (Note 9)	14,853	17,225
Warrant derivative (Note 11)	663	-
<b>Total liabilities</b>	<b>\$ 61,379</b>	<b>\$ 123,794</b>
<b>SHAREHOLDERS EQUITY</b>		
Share capital (Note 10)	\$ 818,454	\$ 800,894
Contributed surplus (Note 10)	25,950	25,870
Accumulated other comprehensive loss	(159,742)	(170,505)
Deficit	(715,344)	(667,617)
<b>Total shareholders deficit attributable to shareholders of Platinum Group Metals Ltd.</b>	<b>(30,682)</b>	<b>(11,358)</b>
Non-controlling interest (Note 12)	11,152	(11,908)
<b>Total shareholders deficit</b>	<b>(19,530)</b>	<b>(23,266)</b>
<b>Total liabilities and shareholders deficit</b>	<b>\$ 41,849</b>	<b>\$ 100,528</b>

Going Concern (Note 1)

Contingencies and Commitments (Note 14)

Subsequent Events (Note 21)

Approved by the Board of Directors and authorized for issue on November 29, 2018

**/s/ Iain McLean**  
Iain McLean, Director

**/s/ Diana Walters**  
Diana Walters, Director

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the condensed consolidated interim financial statements.

2

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Consolidated Statements of Loss and Comprehensive Loss (Income)

(in thousands of United States Dollars except share and per share data)

	Year Ended August 31, 2018	Year Ended August 31, 2017	Year Ended August 31, 2016
<b>EXPENSES</b>			
General and administrative (Note 17)	\$ 6,084	\$ 5,749	\$ 5,421
Interest	18,414	367	-
Foreign exchange loss (gain)	4,068	(4,563)	(1,664)
Stock compensation expense (Note 10)	77	1,144	150
Maseve closure, care and maintenance costs	14,437	-	-
Impairment Charge	-	589,162	41,371
	\$ 43,080	\$ 591,859	\$ 45,278
Gain on fair value of convertible debt derivative (Note 9,11)	(3,726)	(2,081)	-
Loss on Asset Held for Sale	2,304	-	-
Loss on fair value of marketable securities	105	-	-
Net finance income	(739)	(1,062)	(1,133)
Loss for the year before income taxes	\$ 41,024	\$ 588,716	\$ 44,145
Deferred income tax expense (recovery) (Note 20)	-	1,655	(7,494)
<b>Loss for the year</b>	<b>\$ 41,024</b>	<b>\$ 590,371</b>	<b>\$ 36,651</b>
Items that may be subsequently reclassified to net loss:			
Currency translation adjustment	(6,350)	(59,086)	50,030
Tax impact items previously recorded to comprehensive loss	(15,527)	-	-
<b>Comprehensive loss for the year</b>	<b>\$ 19,147</b>	<b>\$ 531,285</b>	<b>\$ 86,681</b>
Loss attributable to:			
Shareholders of Platinum Group Metals Ltd.	38,682	542,415	20,675
Non-controlling interests	2,342	47,956	15,976
	\$ 41,024	\$ 590,371	\$ 36,651
Comprehensive loss attributable to:			
Shareholders of Platinum Group Metals Ltd.	16,805	480,741	66,984
Non-controlling interests	2,342	50,544	19,697
	\$ 19,147	\$ 531,285	\$ 86,681
Basic and diluted loss per common share	\$ 0.20	\$ 4.30	\$ 0.26
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding:			
Basic and diluted	190,531,439	126,019,077	80,438,434

The accompanying notes are an integral part of the condensed consolidated interim financial statements.

---



**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Consolidated Statements of Changes in Equity

(in thousands ) Shares of United States Dollars, except # of Common

	# of Common Shares	Share Capital	Contributed Surplus	Accumulated Other Comprehensive Income (loss)	Deficit	Attributable to Shareholders of the Parent Company	Non- Controlling Interest
<b>Balance, August 31, 2015</b>	<b>76,894,302</b>	<b>\$ 681,762</b>	<b>\$ 23,646</b>	<b>\$ (185,872)</b>	<b>\$ (104,570)</b>	<b>\$ 414,966</b>	<b>\$ 58,380</b>
Share based compensation	-	-	357	-	-	357	-
Share issuance financing	11,000,000	33,000	-	-	-	33,000	-
Share issuance costs	-	(2,959)	-	-	-	(2,959)	-
Shares issued for loan facilities (Note 8)	960,476	2,384	-	-	-	2,384	-
Transactions with non-controlling interest	2,250	3	-	-	-	3	-
Foreign currency translation adjustment	-	-	-	(46,307)	-	(46,307)	(3,725)
Net loss for the year	-	-	-	-	(20,675)	(20,675)	(15,976)
<b>Balance, August 31, 2016</b>	<b>88,857,028</b>	<b>\$ 714,190</b>	<b>\$ 24,003</b>	<b>\$ (232,179)</b>	<b>\$ (125,245)</b>	<b>\$ 380,769</b>	<b>\$ 38,679</b>
Share based compensation	-	-	1,867	-	-	1,867	-
Share issuance financing	57,313,750	88,774	-	-	-	88,774	-
Share issuance costs	-	(7,210)	-	-	-	(7,210)	-
Shares issued on conversion of convertible note	13,190	12	-	-	-	12	-
Shares issued for loan facilities (Note 8)	2,285,409	5,128	-	-	-	5,128	-
Transactions with non-controlling interest	-	-	-	-	43	43	(43)
Foreign currency translation	-	-	-	61,671	-	61,671	(2,588)

adjustment

Net loss for the year	-	-	-	-	(542,415)	(542,415)	(47,956)
<b>Balance August 31, 2017</b>	<b>148,469,377</b>	<b>\$ 800,894</b>	<b>\$ 25,870</b>	<b>\$ (170,505)</b>	<b>\$ (667,617)</b>	<b>\$ (11,358)</b>	<b>\$ (11,908)</b>
Stock based compensation	-	-	80	-	-	80	-
Shares issued for interest on convertible note	10,019,872	1,416	-	-	-	1,416	-
Units issued financing	132,544,861	18,557	-	-	-	18,557	-
Unit issuance costs	-	(2,413)	-	-	-	(2,413)	-
Non-controlling interest impact of the sale of Maseve	-	-	-	(11,114)	(7,690)	(18,804)	18,804
Equity impact from partial sale of Waterberg	-	-	-	-	14,172	14,172	1,962
Contributions of Waterberg JV Co (Note 7)	-	-	-	-	-	-	4,636
Foreign currency translation adjustment	-	-	-	6,350	-	6,350	-
Tax impact from Waterberg and other equity transactions	-	-	-	15,527	(15,527)	-	-
Net loss for the year	-	-	-	-	(38,682)	(38,682)	(2,342)
<b>Balance August 31, 2018</b>	<b>291,034,110</b>	<b>\$ 818,454</b>	<b>\$ 25,950</b>	<b>\$ (159,742)</b>	<b>\$ (715,344)</b>	<b>\$ (30,682)</b>	<b>\$ 11,152</b>

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows  
(in thousands of United States Dollars)

	<b>For the year ended</b>		
	<b>August 31, 2018</b>	<b>August 31, 2017</b>	<b>August 31, 2016</b>
<b>OPERATING ACTIVITIES</b>			
Loss for the year	\$ (41,024)	\$ (590,371)	\$ (36,651)
Add items not affecting cash:			
Depreciation	347	535	446
Effective interest	18,414	367	-
Unrealized foreign exchange gain	(65)	(324)	(46)
Gain on fair value of convertible debt derivative	(3,726)	(2,081)	-
Loss on asset held for sale	2,305	-	-
Unrealized loss on marketable securities	105	-	-
Deferred income tax expense (recovery)	-	1,656	(7,494)
Stock compensation expense	77	1,144	150
Impairment charge	-	589,162	41,371
Net change in non-cash working capital (Note 15)	2,965	2,533	3,869
	\$ (20,602)	2,621	1,645
<b>FINANCING ACTIVITIES</b>			
Proceeds from issuance of equity	\$ 19,882	\$ 88,774	\$ 33,000
Equity issuance costs	(2,562)	(7,210)	(2,958)
Share issuance stock options	-	-	3
Cash proceeds convertible note	-	20,000	-
Costs associated with convertible note	(95)	(249)	-
Cash received from sale of Maseve	62,000	-	-
Sprott interest paid (Note 8)	(3,401)	(3,938)	(3,049)
Interest capitalized on debt proceeds	-	67	927
Cash proceeds from debt (Note 8)	10,000	5,000	80,000
Sprott principal repayments (Note 8)	(50,000)	(5,000)	-
Repayment of Liberty debt and production payment termination	(23,163)	-	-
Costs associated with the debt (Note 8)	(866)	(224)	(1,240)
	11,795	97,220	106,683
<b>INVESTING ACTIVITIES</b>			
Acquisition of property, plant and equipment	\$ -	\$ (134,488)	\$ (133,350)
Proceeds from partial sale of interest in Waterberg	16,124	-	-
Transfer to restricted cash (Waterberg)	(5,000)	-	-
Expenditures from restricted cash (Waterberg)	4,874	-	-
Fees paid on asset held for sale (Note 6)	(1,000)	-	-
Proceeds from the sale of concentrate	2,016	16,609	6,645
Waterberg exploration expenditures	(9,125)	-	-
Performance bonds	-	(600)	(974)

	7,889	(118,479)	(127,679)
<b>Net (decrease) increase in cash and cash equivalents</b>	(918)	(18,638)	(19,351)
Effect of foreign exchange on cash and cash equivalents	521	5,602	(3,281)
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, beginning of year</b>	<b>3,414</b>	<b>16,450</b>	<b>39,082</b>
<b>Cash and cash equivalents, end of year</b>	<b>\$ 3,017</b>	<b>\$ 3,414</b>	<b>\$ 16,450</b>

---

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)****1. NATURE OF OPERATIONS AND GOING CONCERN**

Platinum Group Metals Ltd. (the **Company**) is a British Columbia, Canada, company formed by amalgamation on February 18, 2002. The Company's shares are publicly listed on the Toronto Stock Exchange (**TSX**) in Canada and the NYSE American, LLC (**NYSE American**) in the United States (formerly the NYSE MKT LLC). The Company's address is Suite 788-550 Burrard Street, Vancouver, British Columbia, V6C 2B5.

The Company is an exploration and development company conducting work on mineral properties it has staked or acquired by way of option agreements in the Republic of South Africa. During the year the Company has disposed of the Maseve Mine to Royal Bafokeng Platinum Limited ("**RBPlat**"). The Company previously held an 82.9% working interest in the property. Please see Note 6 for further details.

These financial statements include the accounts of the Company and its subsidiaries. The Company's subsidiaries (collectively with the Company, the **Group**) as at August 31, 2018 are as follows:

Name of subsidiary	Principal activity	Place of incorporation and operation	Proportion of ownership interest and voting power held	
			August 31, 2018	August 31, 2017
Platinum Group Metals (RSA) (Pty) Ltd.	Exploration	South Africa	100%	100%
Mnombo Wethu Consultants (Pty) Limited. <sup>1</sup>	Exploration	South Africa	49.9%	49.9%
Waterberg JV Resources (Pty) Ltd.	Exploration	South Africa	37.05%	45.65%

<sup>1</sup> The Company controls and consolidates Mnombo Wethu Consultants (Pty) Limited (**Mnombo**) and Waterberg JV Resources (Pty) Ltd. for accounting purposes.

These consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with International Financial Reporting Standards (**IFRS**) applicable to a going concern which contemplates that the Company will be able to realize its assets and settle its liabilities in the normal course as they come due for the foreseeable future. The Company had a loss of \$41 million for the year and has negative equity amounting to \$19.5 million as at August 31, 2018. At August 31, 2018, the Company was indebted \$46.5 million pursuant to the LMM Facility (as defined below). This debt is due October 31, 2019. Additional payments/interest (which can be paid with shares of the Company) are also due on the convertible debt. During the year the Company announced and completed the sale of the Maseve Mine for initial gross proceeds of \$74 million. Stage one of the Maseve Sale Transaction (as defined below) was closed on April 5, 2018, with stage two closing April 26, 2018. Also during the period, Implats completed the strategic acquisition of an 8.6% interest in Waterberg JV Co. from the Company for \$17.2 million and the Company completed the sale 132 million units resulting in gross proceeds of \$19.9 million. As a result of these transactions, the Sprott facility has been completely paid down and the LMM repayment schedule has been crystalized. The Company currently has limited financial resources and has no sources of operating income at present.

The Company's ability to continue operations in the normal course of business will therefore depend upon its ability to secure additional funding by methods that could include debt refinancing, equity financing, sale of assets and strategic

partnerships. Management believes the Company will be able to secure further funding as required. Nonetheless, there exist material uncertainties resulting in substantial doubt as to the ability of the Company to continue to meet its obligations as they come due and hence, the ultimate appropriateness of the use of accounting principals applicable to a going concern.

These consolidated financial statements do not include adjustments or disclosures that may result should the Company not be able to continue as a going concern. If the going concern assumption were not appropriate for these consolidated financial statements, then adjustments would be required to the carrying value of assets and liabilities, the expenses, the reported comprehensive loss and balance sheet classifications used that would be necessary if the Company were unable to realize its assets and settle its liabilities as a going concern in the normal course of operations. These adjustments could be material.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)****2. BASIS OF PRESENTATION AND SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES**

These consolidated financial statements have been prepared in accordance with the Handbook of the Canadian Institute of Chartered Professional Accountants, in accordance with IFRS, as issued by International Accounting Standards Board ( **IASB** ), applicable to the preparation of consolidated financial statements and in accordance with accounting policies based on IFRS standards and International Financial Reporting Interpretations Committee ( **IFRIC** ) interpretations. The Company has consistently applied the accounting policies used in the preparation of its IFRS financial statements throughout all periods presented, as if these policies had always been in effect.

Significant Accounting Policies

The principal accounting policies applied in the preparation of these consolidated financial statements are set out below.

**a. Consolidation**

The consolidated financial statements include those of the Company, its subsidiaries, associates, joint ventures and structured entities that it controls, using uniform accounting policies. Control exists when the Company has (i) power over the investee, (ii) exposure, or rights, to variable returns from its involvement with the investee, and (iii) the ability to use its power to affect its returns.

Non-controlling interests in the net assets of consolidated subsidiaries are identified separately from the Company's equity.

Subsidiaries are all entities (including structured entities) over which the Company has control. Subsidiaries are fully consolidated from the date on which control is transferred to the Group. They are de-consolidated from the date that control ceases.

Inter-company transactions, balances and unrealized gains on transactions between Group companies are eliminated on consolidation. Unrealized losses are also eliminated unless the transaction provides evidence of an impairment of the asset transferred.

**b. Translation of foreign currencies***Functional currency*

Items included in the financial statements of the Company and each of the Company's subsidiaries are measured using the currency of the primary economic environment in which the entity operates (the functional currency) as follows:

Platinum Group Metals Ltd.	Canadian Dollars
Platinum Group Metals (RSA) (Pty) Ltd.	South African Rand
Maseve Investments 11 (Pty) Ltd.	South African Rand
Mnombo Wethu Consultants (Pty) Limited	South African Rand
Waterberg JV Resources (Pty) Ltd	South African Rand

*Presentation Currency*

The Company's presentation currency is the United States Dollar ( USD )

*Foreign Exchange Rates Used*

The following exchange rates were used when preparing these consolidated financial statements:

Rand/USD

Year-end rate: R14.6883 (2017 R13.0190)

Year average rate: R12.9572 (2017 R13.4711)



**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

CAD/USD

Year-end rate: C\$1.3055 (2017 C\$1.2536)

Year average rate: C\$1.2776 (2017 C\$1.3212)

*Transactions and balances*

Foreign currency transactions are translated into the relevant entity's functional currency using the exchange rates prevailing at the date of the transaction. Foreign currency gains and losses resulting from the settlement of such transactions and from the translation at period-end exchange rates of monetary assets and liabilities denominated in foreign currencies are recognized in the income statement.

*Subsidiaries*

The results and financial position of subsidiaries that have a functional currency different from the presentation currency are translated into the presentation currency as follows:

Assets and liabilities are translated at the closing rate at the reporting date;

Income and expenses are translated at average exchange rates for the period; and

All resulting exchange differences are recognized in other comprehensive income as cumulative translation adjustments.

**c. *Change in ownership interests***

The Company treats transactions with non-controlling interests that do not result in a loss of control as transactions with equity owners. A change in ownership interest results in an adjustment between the carrying amounts of the controlling and non-controlling interests to reflect their relative interest in the subsidiary. Any difference between the amount of the adjustment to non-controlling interests and any consideration received is recognized in a separate line in retained earnings.

**d. *Cash and cash equivalents***

Cash and cash equivalents consist of cash and short-term deposits, which are readily convertible to cash and have original maturities of 90 days or less.

**e. *Marketable Securities***

Marketable Securities represent shares received from the sale of the Maseve mine. The shares held are shares of Royal Bafokeng Platinum and are traded on the Johannesburg Stock Exchange. While shares were held in escrow prior to phase 2 of the Maseve sale being completed, all changes in value were recorded in Loss on Asset Held for Sale. Following the completion of phase 2 of the Maseve sale all changes in value of the shares are recorded in Loss on Fair Value of Marketable Securities.

**f. *Exploration and evaluation assets***

Exploration and evaluation activity involves the search for mineral resources, the determination of technical feasibility and the assessment of commercial viability of an identified resource.

Exploration and evaluation activity includes:

- acquiring the rights to explore;
- researching and analyzing historical exploration data;
- gathering exploration data through topographical, geochemical and geophysical studies;
- exploratory drilling, trenching and sampling;
- determining and examining the volume and grade of the resource;
- surveying transportation and infrastructure requirements; and
- compiling pre-feasibility and feasibility studies.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

Exploration and evaluation expenditures on identifiable properties are capitalized. Exploration and evaluation assets are shown separately until technical feasibility and commercial viability is achieved at which point the relevant asset is transferred to development assets under property, plant and equipment. Capitalized costs are all considered to be tangible assets as they form part of the underlying mineral property.

Capitalized exploration and evaluation assets are reviewed for impairment when facts or circumstances suggest an asset's carrying amount may exceed its recoverable amount. If impairment is considered to exist, the related asset is written down to the greater of its value in use and its fair value less costs to sell.

***g. Property, plant and equipment***

Property, plant and equipment are stated at cost less accumulated depreciation and accumulated impairment losses. The cost of an item of property, plant and equipment includes the purchase price or construction cost, any costs directly attributable to bringing the asset to the location and condition necessary for its intended use, an initial estimate of the costs of dismantling and removing the item and restoring the site on which it is located, and for qualifying assets, the associated borrowing costs.

Where an item of property, plant and equipment is comprised of major components with different useful lives, the components are accounted for as separate items of property, plant and equipment.

Costs incurred for new construction, mine development, and major overhauls of existing equipment are capitalized as property, plant and equipment and are subject to depreciation once they are put into use. The costs of routine maintenance and repairs are expensed as incurred.

Once a mining project has been established as technically feasible and commercially viable, expenditure other than on land, buildings, plant and equipment is capitalised as part of development assets together with any related amount transferred from exploration and evaluation assets. Capitalization of costs incurred and revenue received during commissioning ceases when the property is capable of operating at levels intended by management.

The present value of the decommissioning cost, which is the dismantling and removal of the asset included in the environmental rehabilitation obligation, is included in the cost of the related preproduction assets. These assets are depreciated over their useful lives.

Subsequent costs are included in the asset's carrying amount only when it is probable that future economic benefits associated with the item will flow to the Company and the cost of the item can be reliably measured. All repairs and maintenance are expensed to profit or loss during the financial period in which they are incurred.

An item of property, plant and equipment is derecognized upon disposal or when no future economic benefits are expected to arise from the continued use of the asset. Any gain or loss arising on the disposal, retirement or scrapping of an item of property, plant and equipment is determined as the difference between the sales proceeds and the carrying amount of the asset and is recognized in profit or loss.

Where an item of property, plant and equipment is comprised of major components with different useful lives, the components are accounted for as separate items of property, plant and equipment. Property, plant and equipment are recorded at cost and are depreciated on a straight-line basis over the following periods:

Edgar Filing: PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD - Form 20-F

Buildings	20 years
Mining equipment	2 22 years
Vehicles	3 5 years
Computer equipment and software	3 5 years
Furniture and fixtures	5 years

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

***h. Asset Held for Sale***

Assets that are immediately available for sale and for which a sale is highly probable are classified as assets held for sale. When several assets are held for sale in a single transaction, they are accounted for as a disposal group, which also includes any liabilities directly associated with those assets. The net assets or disposal groups held for sale are measured at the lower of carrying amount and fair value less costs to sell. Depreciation ceases when assets are classified as held for sale. At each balance sheet date, the value of the assets and liabilities held for sale is reviewed to determine whether any provision adjustments should be recorded due to a change in their fair value less costs to sell.

***i. Impairment***

Long-lived assets are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the carrying amount may not be recoverable.

The Company conducts internal reviews of asset values which are used to assess for any indications of impairment. External factors such as changes in expected future prices, costs and other market factors including market capitalization are also monitored to assess for indications of impairment.

If any such indication exists an estimate of the recoverable amount is undertaken, being the higher of an asset's fair value less costs to sell and its value in use. If the asset's carrying amount exceeds its recoverable amount, then an impairment loss is recognized.

Fair value is determined as the amount that would be obtained from the sale of the asset in an arm's length transaction between knowledgeable and willing parties. Fair value of mineral assets is generally determined as the present value of the estimated future cash flows expected to arise from the use of the asset, including any expansion prospects.

Value in use is determined as the present value of the estimated future cash flows expected to arise from the continued use of the asset in its present form and from its ultimate disposal.

Impairment is assessed at the level of cash-generating units ( **CGUs** ), which are identified as the smallest identifiable group of assets that generates cash inflows that are largely independent of the cash inflows from other assets. The Company's CGUs are based on geographic location. The Company's two CGUs at present are the Maseve Mine and the Waterberg Project.

Long-lived assets that have been impaired are tested for possible reversal of the impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that the impairment may have reversed. When a reversal of a previous impairment is recorded, the reversal amount is adjusted for depreciation that would have been recorded had the impairment not taken place.

***j. Trade payables***

Trade payables are obligations to pay for goods or services that have been acquired in the ordinary course of business from suppliers. Accounts payable are classified as current liabilities if payment is due within one year or less. If not, they are presented as non-current liabilities.

Trade payables are recognised initially at fair value and subsequently measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method.

***k. Asset retirement obligations***

Provisions for asset retirement obligations are made in respect of the estimated future costs of closure and restoration and for environmental rehabilitation costs (which include the dismantling and demolition of infrastructure, removal of residual materials and remediation of disturbed areas) in the accounting period when the related disturbance occurs. The provision is discounted using a risk-free pre-tax rate, and the unwinding of the discount is included in finance costs. At the time of establishing the provision, a corresponding asset is recognized and is depreciated over the future life of the asset to which it relates. The provision is adjusted on an annual basis for changes in cost estimates, discount rates and inflation.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

***l. Convertible Notes***

At inception the debt component of the convertible notes is deemed to be the residual value of the net proceeds after the fair value of the embedded derivatives are separated. The debt component is then measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method. The embedded derivatives are revalued at each reporting period with the change in fair value being recorded in profit or loss in each reporting period.

***m. Warrants***

As the exercise price of certain of the Company's share purchase warrants is fixed in US Dollar, and the functional currency of the Company is the Canadian Dollar, these warrants are considered a derivative as a variable amount of cash in the Company's functional currency will be received on exercise. Accordingly, these share purchase warrants are classified and accounted for as a derivative liability. The fair value of the warrants is determined by the market price at end of the relevant period or year.

***n. Share Capital***

Common shares are classified as equity. Incremental costs directly attributable to the issue of common shares and share options are recognized as a deduction from equity, net of any tax effect.

***o. Stock-based compensation***

The fair values for stock-based awards have been estimated using the Black-Scholes model and recorded as compensation cost over the period of vesting. The compensation cost related to stock options granted is expensed or capitalized to mineral properties, as applicable. Cash received on exercise of stock options is credited to share capital and the related amount previously recognized in contributed surplus is reclassified to share capital.

***p. Income taxes***

Income tax expense represents the sum of the tax currently payable and deferred tax.

**Current tax**

Current tax expense is based on taxable profit for the year. Taxable profit differs from 'profit before tax' as reported in the consolidated statement of loss and other comprehensive loss because of items of income or expense that are taxable or deductible in other years and items that are never taxable or deductible. The Company's current tax is calculated using tax rates that have been enacted or substantively enacted by the end of the reporting period.

**Deferred tax**

Deferred tax is recognised on temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities in the consolidated financial statements and the corresponding tax bases used in the computation of taxable profit. Deferred tax liabilities are generally recognised for all taxable temporary differences. Deferred tax assets are generally recognised for all deductible temporary differences to the extent that it is probable that taxable profits will be available against which those deductible temporary differences can be utilised. Such deferred tax assets and liabilities are not recognised if the temporary difference arises from the initial recognition (other than in a business combination) of

assets and liabilities in a transaction that affects neither the taxable profit nor the accounting profit.

The carrying amount of deferred tax assets is reviewed at the end of each reporting period and reduced to the extent that it is no longer probable that sufficient taxable profits will be available to allow all or part of the asset to be recovered.



**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

Deferred tax liabilities and assets are measured at the tax rates that are expected to apply in the period in which the liability is settled or the asset realised, based on tax rates (and tax laws) that have been enacted or substantively enacted by the end of the reporting period.

The measurement of deferred tax liabilities and assets reflects the tax consequences that would follow from the manner in which the Group expects, at the end of the reporting period, to recover or settle the carrying amount of its assets and liabilities.

**q. Loss per common share**

Basic loss per common share is calculated using the weighted average number of common shares outstanding. The Company uses the treasury stock method for the calculation of diluted earnings per share. Diluted per share amounts reflect the potential dilution that could occur if securities or other contracts to issue common shares were exercised or converted to common shares. In periods when a loss is incurred, the effect of the potential issuances of shares is anti-dilutive, and accordingly basic and diluted loss per share are the same.

**r. Financial instruments**

IFRS establishes a fair value hierarchy that categorizes the inputs to valuation techniques used to measure fair value into three levels:

- Level 1 Quoted prices in active markets for the same instrument. classified
- Level 2 Valuation techniques for which significant inputs are based on observable market data.
- Level 3 Valuation techniques for which any significant input is not based on observable market data.

The carrying value of marketable securities was based on the quoted market prices of the shares as at August 31, 2018 and was therefore considered to be Level 1 as the Company anticipates disposing of these shares within the next year.

**(i) Financial assets and liabilities**

**Loans and receivables** Loans and receivables comprise cash and cash equivalents, amounts receivable and performance bonds. Loans and receivables are non-derivative financial assets with fixed or determinable payments that are not quoted in an active market. They are classified as current assets or non-current assets based on their maturity date. Loans and receivables are initially recognized at fair value and subsequently carried at amortized cost less any impairment.

Financial liabilities are classified as either financial liabilities or at fair value through profit or loss.

**Financial liabilities** - Other financial liabilities are initially measured at fair value, net of transaction costs and are subsequently measured at amortized cost using the effective interest method, with interest expense recognized on an effective yield basis. The Company has classified accounts payable, accrued liabilities and the debt portion of the convertible notes as other financial liabilities.

**Fair value through profit or loss** - The Company has classified the convertible note derivative as fair value through profit or loss and adjusts the fair value each quarter.

(ii) Impairment of financial assets

The Company assesses at each reporting date whether there is objective evidence that a financial asset or a group of financial assets is impaired. Impairment losses on financial assets carried at amortized cost are reversed in subsequent periods if the amount of the loss decreases and the decrease can be related objectively to an event occurring after the impairment was recognized.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

*s. Future accounting changes*

Recently Issued Accounting Pronouncements

The following new accounting standards, amendments and interpretations, that have not been early adopted in these consolidated financial statements, will or may have an effect on the Company's future results and financial position:

(i) IFRS 9, *Financial Instruments*

In July 2014, the IASB issued the final version of IFRS 9, *Financial Instruments* which will replace IAS 39, *Financial Instruments*. The standard is effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2018 and permits early adoption. IFRS 9 provides a revised model for recognition and measurement of financial instruments with two classification categories: amortized cost and fair value. As well, under the new standard a single impairment method is required, replacing the multiple impairment methods in IAS 39. IFRS 9 also includes a substantially reformed approach to hedge accounting that links accounting more closely with risk management. The Company is assessing IFRS 9's impact on its financial statements and has preliminarily concluded that this standard will materially impact the measurement of the Company's long-term debt and the accounting for several debt amendments during the current and prior years.

(ii) IFRS 16, *Leases*

In January 2016, the IASB issued IFRS 16. IFRS 16 sets out the principals for the recognition, measurement, presentation and disclosure of leases for both parties to a contract, which is the customer ( lessee ) and the supplier ( lessor ). IFRS 16 replaces IAS 17, *Leases* and related interpretations. Save for limited exceptions, all leases result in the lessee obtaining the right to use an asset at the start of the lease and, if lease payments are made over time, also obtaining financing. Accordingly, IFRS 16 eliminates the classification of leases as either operating leases or finance leases as is required by IAS 17 and, instead, introduces a single lessee accounting model. Applying that model, a lessee is required to recognize:

i) Assets and liabilities for all leases with a term of more than 12 months, unless the underlying assets is of low value; and

ii) Depreciation of lease assets separately from interest on lease liabilities in the statement of income.

The new standard is effective for annual periods beginning on or after January 1, 2019. As the Company's year end is August, the first effective year will be fiscal 2020. The adoption of this standard would not have a significant impact on the financial statements of the Company based on its current leasing activity.

**3. Significant accounting judgments and estimates**

The preparation of the financial statements in conformity with IFRS requires the use of judgments and estimates that affect the amount reported and disclosed in the consolidated financial statements and related notes. These judgments and estimates are based on management's best knowledge of the relevant facts and circumstances, having regard to previous experience, but actual results may differ materially from the amounts included in the financial statements. Information about such judgments and estimation is contained in the accounting policies and notes to the financial statements, and the key areas are summarized below.

Areas of judgment and key sources of estimation uncertainty that have the most significant effect on the amounts recognized in these consolidated financial statements are:

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

- Fair value of embedded derivatives including convertible debt derivative and warrants
- Determination of ore reserves and mineral resource estimates
- Assumption of control of Mnombo for accounting purposes
- Deferred tax assets and liabilities and resource taxes

Each of these judgments and estimates is considered in their respective notes or in more detail below.

*Fair value of embedded derivatives*

Where the fair value of financial liabilities recorded in the financial statements cannot be derived from active markets, their fair value is determined using valuation techniques including the partial differential equation method. The inputs to this model are taken from observable markets where possible, but where this is not feasible, a degree of judgment is required in establishing fair values. The judgments include considerations of inputs such as liquidity risk, credit risk and volatility. Changes in assumptions about these factors could affect the reported fair value of financial instruments. When measuring the fair value of an asset or liability, the Company uses observable market data as far as possible.

*Determination of ore reserve and mineral resource estimates*

The Company estimates its ore reserves and mineral resources based on information compiled by Qualified Persons as defined by NI 43-101. Reserves determined in this way are used in the calculation of depreciation, amortization and impairment charges, and for forecasting the timing of the payment of close down and restoration costs. In assessing the life of a mine for accounting purposes, mineral resources are only taken into account where there is a high degree of confidence of economic extraction. There are numerous uncertainties inherent in estimating ore reserves, and assumptions that are valid at the time of estimation and they may change significantly when new information becomes available. Changes in the forecast prices of commodities, exchange rates, production costs or recovery rates may change the economic status of reserves and may, ultimately, result in reserves being restated. Such changes in reserves could impact depreciation and amortization rates, asset carrying values and provisions for close down and restoration costs.

*Assumption of control of Mnombo for accounting purposes*

The Company has judged that it controls Mnombo for accounting purposes as it owns 49.9% of the outstanding shares of Mnombo and has contributed all material capital to Mnombo since acquiring its 49.9% share. Currently there are no other sources of funding known to be available to Mnombo. If in the future Mnombo is not deemed to be controlled by the Company, the assets and liabilities of Mnombo would be derecognized at their carrying amounts. Amounts recognized in other comprehensive income would be transferred directly to retained earnings. If a retained interest remained after the loss of control it would be recognized at its fair value on the date of loss of control. Although the Company controls Mnombo for accounting purposes, it does not have omniscient knowledge of Mnombo's other shareholders activities. Mnombo's 50.1% shareholders are historically disadvantaged South Africans.

*Deferred tax assets and liabilities and resource taxes*

The determination of our future tax liabilities and assets involves significant management estimation and judgment involving a number of assumptions. In determining these amounts the Company interprets tax legislation in a variety of jurisdictions and makes estimates of the expected timing of the reversal of future tax assets and liabilities. We also make estimates of our future earnings which affect the extent to which potential future tax benefits may be used. We

are subject to assessment by various taxation authorities, which may interpret tax legislation in a manner different from our view. These differences may affect the final amount or the timing of the payment of taxes. When such differences arise, we make provision for such items based on our best estimate of the final outcome of these matters.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

**4. Marketable Securities**

During the year, the Company received 4,524,279 shares of RBPlats in connection with the sale of the Maseve Mine (see note 6 for further details). These marketable securities owned by the Company are designated as fair value through profit and loss ( FVTPL ) with changes in fair value recorded through profit or loss. These shares are carried at fair value using the quoted market price at August 31, 2018. During the year the Company recognized an unrealized loss of \$105 (2017 \$Nil) on the value of the RBPlats shares held since they were released from escrow upon completion of phase 2 of the sale of the Maeve Mine. Please see Note 6 for further details.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)****5. PROPERTY, PLANT AND EQUIPMENT**

	<b>Development Assets</b>	<b>Land</b>	<b>Buildings</b>	<b>Office Equipment</b>	<b>Mining Equipment</b>	<b>Total</b>
<b>COST</b>						
Balance, August 31, 2016	\$ 422,658	\$ 8,547	\$ 10,500	\$ 2,411	\$ 45,234	\$ 489,350
Additions	130,868 <sup>1</sup>	-	2,655	529	2,046	136,098
Impairment and transfer to Asset Held for Sale	(604,974)	(9,648)	(14,506)	(898)	(52,157)	(682,183) <sup>2</sup>
Foreign exchange movement	51,448	1,101	1,351	247	5,825	59,972
<b>Balance, August 31, 2017</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 2,289</b>	<b>\$ 948</b>	<b>\$ 3,237</b>
Disposals	-	-	-	(50)	(169)	(219)
Foreign exchange movement	-	-	-	(200)	(108)	(308)
<b>Balance August 31, 2018</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 2,039</b>	<b>\$ 671</b>	<b>\$ 2,710</b>
<b>ACCUMULATED DEPRECIATION</b>						
Balance, August 31, 2016	-	-	1,587	1,407	16,660	19,654
Depreciation	-	-	962	516	7,750	9,228
Transfer to Asset Held for Sale	-	-	(2,753)	(599)	(26,319)	(29,671) <sup>2</sup>
Foreign exchange movement	-	-	204	134	2,145	2,483
<b>Balance, August 31, 2017</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 1,458</b>	<b>\$ 236</b>	<b>\$ 1,694</b>
Depreciation	-	-	-	310	37	347
Disposals	-	-	-	(45)	(198)	(243)
Foreign exchange movement	-	-	-	(118)	(27)	(145)
<b>Balance August 31, 2018</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 1,605</b>	<b>\$ 48</b>	<b>\$ 1,653</b>
<b>Net book value, August 31, 2017</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 831</b>	<b>\$ 712</b>	<b>\$ 1,543</b>
<b>Net book value, August 31, 2018</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ 434</b>	<b>\$ 623</b>	<b>\$ 1,057</b>

<sup>1</sup> Includes pre-production revenue credited of \$15.2 million (see below) and \$13.4 million of interest expense<sup>2</sup> Total transfer to Assets Held for Sale of \$646,038. Asset Impairment of \$280,357 recognized in interim periods is now included in Assets Held for Sale (Note 6)



**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)****6. ASSET HELD FOR SALE**

The Maseve Mine is located in the Western Bushveld region of South Africa. Costs for the Maseve Mine were capitalized and classified as development assets in Property, Plant and Equipment until August 31, 2017. On September 6, 2017 the Company announced it had entered into a term sheet (the Term Sheet) to sell the Maseve Mine to RBPlat. At August 31, 2017 the held for sale criteria were met and all capitalized costs were reclassified as an Asset Held for Sale and written down to \$69.9 million, being the estimated net proceeds from the sale of the Maseve Mine.

On September 6, 2017 the Company entered into the Term Sheet to sell the Maseve Mine for approximately \$74 million, payable as to \$62 million in cash and \$12 million in RBPlat common shares (the Maseve Sale Transaction). Definitive legal agreements for this sale were executed on November 23, 2017. The Maseve Sale Transaction occurred in two stages:

In stage one RBPlat paid Maseve \$58 million in cash to acquire the concentrator plant and certain surface assets of the Maseve Mine, including an appropriate allocation for power and water (the "Plant Sale Transaction"). Payment was received April 6, 2018 with \$3.5 million used to settle outstanding contractor claims, \$47.0 million used to settle the Sprott Facility (see note 8) and the remaining \$7.5 million applied to amounts owed to Liberty (see note 8).

In stage two RBPlat paid PTM RSA \$7 million in RBPlat common shares, as valued on September 6, 2017, plus the refund of Maseve's environmental bond, valued at approximately \$4 million on September 6, 2017, to acquire PTM RSA's remaining loans due from Maseve. RBPlat also paid PTM RSA and Africa Wide Mineral Prospecting and Exploration (Pty) Ltd. (a wholly owned subsidiary of Wesizwe Platinum Ltd), in proportion to their respective equity interests in Maseve, a further \$5 million in RBPlat common shares, as valued on September 6, 2017, to acquire 100% of the equity in Maseve. Stage two was completed on April 26, 2018 with the release of 4.87 million RBPlat common shares from escrow, worth approximately \$9.1 million at that time. The required cash payment was made on May 29, 2018, funded by the release of Maseve's Rand 58 million environmental bond, valued at \$4.57 million on May 29, 2018. The resulting difference in aggregate value from September 6, 2017 to completion is recorded as a loss on the disposal of the asset held for sale. The Company's 4.52 million RBPlat common shares received for stage two were all held in a broker account at August 31, 2018, pending future disposition and payment of proceeds to LMM. The Company expects to dispose of these shares within a year and therefore this financial asset has been classified as held for trading and the fair value loss of \$105 that was incurred on the value of those shares between April 26, 2018 and year end was recorded in the loss for the year. The value of the marketable securities at year end was \$7.1 million.

The value and movement of the asset held for sale as follows:

Purchase Price	\$	74,000
Less: fees directly attributable to sale		(4,111)
Maseve asset held for sale at August 31, 2017	\$	69,889
Fees paid in fiscal 2018		1,000
Proceeds from Sale		(71,695)
Loss on partial disposal of the asset held for sale		(2,305)
Surface rights remaining for sale		285
Remaining liability (see note 8)		2,826
Remaining asset held for sale August 31, 2018	\$	-

The remaining liability of \$2.8 million is contingent on the full repayment of the outstanding Sprott and Liberty loan balances. Accordingly, the remaining liability is transferred to loan payable.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)****7. EXPLORATION AND EVALUATION ASSETS**

Since mid-2015, the Company's only active exploration project has been the Waterberg Project located on the North Limb of the Western Bushveld Complex. No material expenditures have been made or are expected to be made in the upcoming year on other immaterial mineral properties. Total capitalized exploration and evaluation expenditures for all exploration properties held by the Company are as follows:

<b>Balance, August 31, 2016</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>22,346</b>
Additions		5,701
Disposal of Project #3 <sup>1</sup>		(2,382)
Recoveries		(5,635)
Foreign exchange movement		2,870
<b>Balance, August 31, 2017</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>22,900</b>
Additions		9,096
Foreign exchange movement		(2,590)
<b>Balance, August 31, 2018</b>		<b>29,406</b>

<sup>1</sup> Project #3 included in Asset Held for Sale

**Waterberg**

The Waterberg Project consists of adjacent, granted and applied-for prospecting rights with a combined area of approximately 111,882 ha, located on the Northern Limb of the Bushveld Complex, approximately 85 km north of the town of Mokopane (formerly Potgietersrus). The Waterberg Project is comprised of the former Waterberg JV Property and the Waterberg Extension Property.

On August 8, 2017, PTM RSA transferred legal title of all Waterberg Project prospecting rights into Waterberg JV Co. upon receiving Section 11 approval of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment (defined below). On September 21, 2017, Waterberg JV Co. issued shares to all existing Waterberg partners pro rata to their joint venture interests, resulting in the Company holding a 45.65% direct interest in Waterberg JV Co., JOGMEC holding a 28.35% interest and Mnombo, as the Company's Black Economic Empowerment ( **BEE** ) partner, holding 26%.

The above transaction was considered a taxable item in South Africa, that was offset with other tax deductible losses and utilization of unrecognized taxable losses.

**Implats Transaction**

On November 6, 2017, the Company closed a transaction, originally announced on October 16, 2017, whereby Implats:

Purchased an aggregate 15.0% equity interest in Waterberg JV Co (the **Initial Purchase** ) for \$30 million. The Company sold an 8.6% interest for \$17.2 million and JOGMEC sold a 6.4% interest for \$12.8 million. From its \$17.2 million in proceeds, the Company has committed \$5.0 million towards its pro rata share of remaining DFS costs. This \$5.0 million is held as restricted cash on the balance sheet with \$0.1 million remaining at August 31, 2018. Implats will also contribute an estimated \$1.5 million for its 15.0% pro rata share of the Definitive Feasibility Study ( **DFS** ) costs. Following the Initial Purchase, the Company holds a direct 37.05% equity

interest, JOGMEC a 21.95% equity interest and Black Economic Empowerment partner Mnombo will maintain a 26.0% equity interest. The Company holds a 49.9% interest in Mnombo, bringing its overall direct and indirect ownership in Waterberg JV Co. to 50.02%.

Acquired an option (the Purchase and Development Option ) whereby upon completion of the DFS, Implats will have a right, within 90 days of the DFS completion, to exercise an option to increase its interest to up to 50.01% in Waterberg JV Co. If Implats exercises the Purchase and Development Option, Implats would commit to purchase an additional 12.195% equity interest in Waterberg JV Co. from JOGMEC for \$34.8 million and commit to an expenditure of \$130.2 million in development work.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)

Following an election to go to a 50.01% project interest as described above, Implats will have another 90 days to confirm the salient terms of a development and mining financing for the Waterberg Project, including a signed financing term sheet, subject only to final credit approval and documentation. After exercising the Purchase and Development Option, Implats will control Waterberg JV Co.

Should Implats complete the increase of its interest in Waterberg JV Co. to 50.01% pursuant to the Purchase and Development Option, the Company would retain a 31.96% direct and indirect interest in Waterberg JV Co. and following completion of Implats' earn-in spending all of the project partners would be required to participate pro-rata. The transaction agreements also provide for the transfer of equity and the issuance of additional equity to one or more broad based black empowerment partners, at fair value.

If Implats does not elect to complete the Purchase and Development Option and the Development and Mining Financing, Implats will retain a 15.0% project interest and the Company will retain a 50.02% direct and indirect interest in the project.

Acquired a right of first refusal to enter into an offtake agreement, on commercial arms-length terms, for the smelting and refining of mineral products from the Waterberg Project. JOGMEC will retain a right to receive platinum, palladium, rhodium, gold, ruthenium, iridium, copper and nickel in refined mineral products at the volume produced from the Waterberg Project.

Acquisition and Development of the Property

In October 2009, PTM RSA, JOGMEC and Mnombo entered into a joint venture agreement with regard to the Waterberg Project (the **JOGMEC Agreement**). Under the terms of the JOGMEC Agreement, in April 2012, JOGMEC completed a \$3.2 million work requirement to earn a 37% interest in the Waterberg JV property, leaving the Company with a 37% interest and Mnombo with a 26% interest. Following JOGMEC's earn-in, the Company funded Mnombo's 26% share of costs, totalling \$1.12 million, until the earn-in phase of the joint venture ended in May 2012.

On November 7, 2011, the Company entered an agreement with Mnombo to acquire 49.9% of the issued and outstanding shares of Mnombo in exchange for cash payments totalling R1.2 million and the Company's agreement to pay for Mnombo's 26% share of costs on the Waterberg JV property until the completion of a feasibility study. Mnombo's share of expenditures prior to this agreement were covered by the Company and are still owed to the Company (\$3.4 million). The Company consolidates Mnombo. The portion of Mnombo not owned by the Company, calculated at \$5.8 million at August 31, 2018 (\$4.6 million August 31, 2017), is accounted for as a non-controlling interest.

On May 26, 2015, the Company announced a second amendment (the **2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment**) to the existing JOGMEC Agreement. Under the terms of the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment the Waterberg JV and Waterberg Extension properties are to be combined and contributed into the newly created operating company Waterberg JV Co. On August 4, 2017, the Company received Section 11 transfer approval from the South African Department of Mineral Resources (**DMR**) and title to all of the Waterberg prospecting rights held by the Company were transferred into Waterberg JV Co.

Under the 2<sup>nd</sup> Amendment, JOGMEC committed to fund \$20 million in expenditures over a three-year period ending March 31, 2018. This funding requirement was completed as an amount of \$8 million was funded by JOGMEC to March 31, 2016, which was followed by two \$6 million tranches spent in each of the following two 12 month periods

ending March 31, 2018.

To August 31, 2018 an aggregate total of \$61.8 million has been funded by all parties on exploration and engineering on the Waterberg Project. Up until the Waterberg property was held in the Waterberg JV Company, all costs incurred by other parties were treated as recoveries.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)****8. LOANS PAYABLE**

Up to August 31, 2017 at which time Maseve was classified as an Asset Held for Sale, net interest expense of \$17.5 million from both loans had been capitalized to development assets in the Maseve Mine. Adjustments and accretion to the Production Payment liability were also capitalized to development assets in the Maseve Mine until August 31, 2017. Effective interest of \$4.9 million and \$10.1 million were recognized on the Sprott Facility and LMM Facility respectively during the year.

Sprott

On February 16, 2015, the Company announced it had entered a credit agreement with a syndicate of lenders (the **Sprott Lenders**) led by Sprott Resource Lending Partnership (**Sprott**) for a senior secured loan facility (the **Sprott Facility**) of \$40 million. The Sprott Facility was drawn on November 20, 2015. During the year, a third advance (the **Third Advance**) of \$5 million was made to the Company, then repaid by the Company then a fourth advance (the **Fourth Advance**) of \$5 million was also made to the Company. All fees directly attributable to the Sprott Facility were capitalized against the loan balance over the life of the loan and amortized using the effective interest method. All advances, interest owing and principal amounts owing to Sprott were repaid during the current year (\$47.1 million) and at August 31, 2018 the Sprott Facility had no future payments due. A summary of the loan since inception is below (excluding advance payments and repayments)

Loan Facility	\$	40,000
Repayment of principal		(40,000)
Drawdown Standby and Amendment fees paid		(7,993)
Interest paid on loan balance		(10,388)
Cumulative interest and finance costs at effective interest rate		18,381
Carrying value as at August 31, 2018	Sprott Facility \$	-

Liberty Loan Facility

Also on November 20, 2015, the Company drew down a \$40 million loan facility (the **LMM Facility**) pursuant to a credit agreement (the **LMM Credit Agreement**) entered into on November 2, 2015 with a significant shareholder, Liberty Metals & Mining Holdings, LLC (**LMM**), a subsidiary of Liberty Mutual Insurance. The LMM Facility bears interest at LIBOR plus 9.5%. At August 31, 2018 (after repayment of the Sprott Facility) LMM held the first lien position on (i) the shares of PTM (RSA) held by the Company and (ii) all current and future assets of the Company. Pursuant to the LMM Credit Agreement the Company also entered into a life of mine Production Payment Agreement (**PPA**) with LMM.

During the year the Company forwarded to Liberty payments totalling \$23.1 million. These payments first paid down the production payment termination accrual of \$15 million. The remaining \$8.1 million was then applied against the loan and accrued interest owing. At August 31, 2018 the Company owed Liberty \$46.5 million.

At inception of the Liberty Facility the Production Payment liability was bifurcated from the loan with the initial value of the Production Payment liability (\$11.2 million) being amortized with effective interest over the remaining life of the loan. As the timing of the scheduled repayment of the loan has been shortened from 2021 to October 2019 this bifurcated amount is being recognized more quickly resulting in a higher effective interest rate of 32% at August 31, 2018. The actual interest rate on the outstanding loan has remained at LIBOR plus 9.5%.

Current Terms of the Liberty Loan

There have been a number of modifications to the LMM Facility. At August 31, 2018, only the loan facility remains to be repaid. On May 11, 2018 the Company announced the following loan amendments where the Company must:

Raise a minimum of US\$15 million in financings of subordinated debt, common shares and/or securities convertible into common shares (the Required Financing ) before May 31, 2018. This was satisfied with by the completion of both a private placement and a public offering of common shares on May 15, 2018 for combined gross proceeds of US\$19.88 million. See details in Note 10 below.

20

---



**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

Apply the first US\$12 million of gross proceeds from the Required Financing to reduce indebtedness under the LMM Facility before May 31, 2018. This was satisfied with proceeds from the May 15, 2018 unit financing

Not otherwise be in default under the LMM Facility. The Company was not in default of any covenants on the LMM Facility at August 31, 2018

Having satisfied the above conditions, the LMM Facility maturity date has been (a) extended to October 31, 2019 (from September 30, 2018), (b) interest will continue to accrue and be capitalized until the maturity date (previously, interest became payable quarterly after June 30, 2018).

Brokerage Fees

As outlined in Note 6 there are brokerage fees still connected to the sale of Maseve. These fees become due when the amounts due to Liberty are repaid in full. As these fees are now contingent on the repayment of the debt they are grouped with the debt as follows:

LMM Facility	\$	39,465
Brokerage Fees		2,826
Loan Payable	\$	<b>42,291</b>

**9. CONVERTIBLE NOTES**

On June 30, 2017, the Company closed a private placement of \$20 million aggregate principal amount of convertible senior subordinated notes ( **Convertible Notes** ) due 2022. The Convertible Notes bear interest at a rate of 6 7/8% per annum, payable semi-annually on January 1 and July 1 of each year, beginning on January 1, 2018, in cash or at the election of the Company, in common shares of the Company or a combination of cash and Common Shares, and will mature on July 1, 2022, unless earlier repurchased, redeemed or converted. An additional interest charge of 0.25% for the period January 1, 2018 to March 31, 2018, plus a further 0.25% for the period April 1, 2018 to July 1, 2018, was added to the coupon rate of the Notes at the Company's election to not file a prospectus and a registration statement for the Notes with Canadian securities regulatory authorities and with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission. After July 1, 2018, at which time the Notes became freely tradable by holders other than affiliates, the Notes once again bear interest at the coupon rate of 6 7/8% per annum.

The Convertible Notes will be convertible at any time at the option of the holder, and may be settled, at the Company's election, in cash, Common Shares, or a combination of cash and Common Shares. If any Convertible Notes are converted on or prior to the three and one half year anniversary of the issuance date, the holder of the Convertible Notes will also be entitled to receive an amount equal to the remaining interest payments on the converted notes to the three and one half year anniversary of the issuance date, discounted by 2%, payable in Common Shares. The initial conversion rate of the Convertible Notes will be 1,001.1112 Common Shares per \$1,000 principal amount of Convertible Notes, which is equivalent to an initial conversion price of approximately \$0.9989 per Common Share, representing a conversion premium of approximately 15% above the NYSE American closing sale price for the Company's Common Shares of \$0.8686 per share on June 27, 2017.

The Convertible Notes contain multiple embedded derivatives (the **Convertible Note Derivatives** ) relating to the conversion and redemption options. The Convertible Note Derivatives were valued upon initial recognition at fair value using partial differential equation methods at \$5,381 (see below). At inception, the debt portion of the

Convertible Notes were reduced by the estimated fair value of the Convertible Note Derivatives of \$5,381 and transaction costs relating to the Convertible Notes of \$1,049 resulting in an opening balance of \$13,570. The Convertible Notes are measured at amortized cost and will be accreted to maturity over the term using the effective interest method.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

On July 20, 2017, a holder of the Convertible Notes converted \$10 of the principal resulting the Company choosing to issue 13,190 common shares to settle the principal and accrued interest.

On January 2, 2018, the Company issued 2,440,629 common shares in settlement of \$691.11 of biannual interest payable on \$19.99 million of outstanding Convertible Notes.

On July 3, 2018, the Company issued 7,579,243 common shares in settlement of \$724.78 of bi-annual interest payable on \$19.99 million of outstanding Convertible Notes.

The components of the Convertible Notes are as follows :

Face value convertible notes	\$	20,000
Transaction costs		(1,049)
Embedded Derivative fair value at inception		(5,381)
Value attributed to debt portion of convertible notes	\$	13,570
Accretion and interest		365
Redemption		(10)
Convertible Note balance August 31, 2017	\$	13,925
Transaction costs incurred during the year		(95)
Interest payments		(1,416)
Accretion and interest incurred during the year		2,378
Debt portion of the convertible notes August 31, 2018		14,792
Embedded Derivatives balance August 31, 2018 (see below)	\$	61
Convertible Note balance August 31, 2018	\$	14,853

**Embedded Derivatives**

The Convertible Note Derivatives was valued upon initial recognition at a fair value of \$5,381 using partial differential equation methods and is subsequently re-measured at fair value at each period-end through the consolidated statement of net loss and comprehensive loss. The fair value of the Convertible Note Derivatives was measured at \$3,300 at August 31, 2017, then \$61 at year end resulting in a gain of \$3,218 for the year. Combined with the gain on the warrant derivative (Note 11) of \$508, this results in net gain of \$3,726.

The assumptions used in the valuation model used at August 31, 2018 and August 31, 2017 include:

Valuation Date	August 31, 2018	August 31, 2017
Share Price (USD)	\$0.10	\$0.52
Volatility	72.43%	56.17%
Risk free rate	2.71%	1.68%
Credit spread	11.58%	13.59%
All-in rate	14.30%	15.27%
Implied discount on share price	- %	20%

The Convertible Note derivative is classified as a level 2 financial instrument in the fair value hierarchy.

**10. SHARE CAPITAL**

(a) Authorized

Unlimited common shares without par value.

(b) Issued and outstanding

At August 31, 2018, the Company had 291,034,110 shares outstanding.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

Fiscal 2018

On May 11, 2018 the Company announced a private placement offering of 15,090,999 units at a price of US\$0.15 per unit for gross proceeds of \$2.3 million. Each unit consisted of one common share and one common share purchase warrant, with each common share purchase warrant allowing the holder to purchase a further common share at a price of US\$0.17. The private placement was contingent on the closure of the public offering that closed May 15, 2018 outlined below. See note 11 for valuation of the warrants.

On May 15, 2018 the Company announced it had closed a public offering of 117,453,862 units at a price of US\$0.15 per unit for gross proceeds for \$17.6 million. Each unit consisted of one common share and one common share purchase warrant, with each common share purchase warrant allowing the holder to purchase a further common share at a price of US\$0.17. See note 11 for valuation of the warrants. Total unit issuance costs of \$2.5 million were incurred for the private placement and public offering

On January 2, 2018 and July 3, 2018, the Company issued 2,440,629 and 7,579,243 respectively in settlement of \$691.11 and \$724,78 of bi-annual interest payable on \$19.99 million of outstanding convertible notes. See Note 9 for further details.

Fiscal 2017

On September 19, 2016, both Sprott and LMM were each issued 801,314 shares with a fair value of \$2.0 million each based on the five-day volume weighted average price on the TSX of C\$3.66 per share (less a ten percent discount), converted to US dollars as consideration for the September 30, 2016 amendment to the outstanding working capital facilities.

On October 12, 2016, upon drawdown of an additional \$5 million from the Amended and Restated Sprott Facility, Sprott was issued 113,963 shares with a value of \$250 as a drawdown fee.

On November 1, 2016, the Company announced the closing of an offering of 22,230,000 common shares at a price of \$1.80 per share resulting in gross proceeds of \$40.0 million. Net proceeds to the Company after fees, commissions and costs were approximately \$36.9 million.

On January 13, 2017, Sprott was issued 275,202 shares and Liberty was issued 293,616 shares with a value of \$878,440 based on the ten-day volume weighted average price on the TSX of C\$2.253 per share (less a ten percent discount), as consideration for the January 13, 2017 amendment to the outstanding working capital facilities.

On January 31, 2017, the Company announced the closing of an offering of 19,693,750 common shares at a price of \$1.46 per share resulting in gross proceeds of \$28.8 million. Net proceeds to the Company after fees, commissions and costs were approximately \$26.3 million.

On April 18, 2017, the Company announced the closing of an offering of 15,390,000 common shares at a price of \$1.30 per share resulting in gross proceeds of \$20.0 million. Net proceeds to the Company after fees, commissions and costs were approximately \$18.3 million.

On July 25, 2017, the Company issued 13,190 shares upon the conversion of \$10 of the Convertible Notes. See Note 9 for further details.

(c) Incentive stock options

The Company has entered into Incentive Stock Option Agreements ( **Agreements** ) under the terms of its stock option plan with directors, officers, consultants and employees. Under the terms of the Agreements, the exercise price of each option is set, at a minimum, at the fair value of the common shares at the date of grant. Certain stock options of the Company are subject to vesting provisions, while others vest immediately. All exercise prices are denominated in Canadian Dollars.

The following tables summarize the Company's outstanding stock options:

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

	Number of Shares	Average Exercise Price
Options outstanding at August 31, 2016	2,977,275	C\$ 7.31
Granted	2,305,000	2.00
Forfeited	(900,000)	6.46
Options outstanding at August 31, 2017	4,382,275	C\$ 4.65
Forfeited	(1,296,775)	4.15
Options outstanding at August 31, 2018	3,085,500	C\$ 4.52

Number Outstanding at August 31, 2018	Number Exercisable at August 31, 2018	Exercise Price	Average Remaining Contractual Life (Years)
2,024,500	1,888,375	C\$ 2.00	3.05
598,000	598,000	6.50	1.46
463,000	463,000	13.00	0.37
3,085,500	2,949,375		2.25

During the year ended August 31, 2018 the Company did not grant any options. Stock based compensation of \$80 (\$3 capitalized to mineral properties and \$77 expensed), was incurred during the year relating to options that vested during the year but were granted in a previous year.

During the year ended August 31, 2017 the Company granted 2,305,000 stock options. These stock options vested immediately. The Company recorded \$1,867 (\$723 capitalized to property plant and equipment and mineral properties and \$1,144 expensed).

**11. WARRANT DERIVATIVE**

The exercise price of the Company's outstanding warrants is denominated in US Dollars; however, the functional currency of PTM Canada (where the warrants are held) is the Canadian Dollar. Therefore, the warrants are required to be recognized and measured at fair value at each reporting period. Any changes in fair value from period to period are recorded as non-cash gain or loss in the consolidated statement of loss and comprehensive loss.

The warrants were issued May 15, 2018 and were initially valued using the residual value method. An initial valuation of \$1,171 was attributed to the warrants which included \$157 of unit issuance costs being attributed to the value of the warrants. As the warrants are publicly traded the value of the warrants at each period will be estimated by using price on the last day of trading in the applicable period. The warrants were trading at US\$0.005 resulting in a value of \$663 and gain of \$508. When combined with the gain on the embedded derivatives in the convertible notes (see Note 9) this results in a net gain of \$3,726 on derivatives.

**12. NON-CONTROLLING INTEREST**

The table below shows details of non-wholly owned subsidiaries of the Group that have material non-controlling interests:





**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

Company	Proportion of ownership and voting rights held by non-controlling interests		Loss allocated to non-controlling interests		Accumulated non-controlling interests	
	2018	2017	2018	2017	2018	2017
	Maseve Investments 11 (Pty) Ltd	17.1%	17.1%	\$2,342	\$47,956	\$ -
Mnombo Wethu Consultants (Pty) Limited	50.1%	50.1%	-	-	5,768	4,555
Waterberg JV Co <sup>1</sup>	62.95%	54.35%	-	-	5,384	-
				Total	\$ 11,152	\$(11,908)

<sup>1</sup>Includes the net book value of mineral properties sold to Impala Platinum Holdings Ltd.

**13. RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS**

Transactions with related parties are as follows:

- (a) During the year ended August 31, 2018 \$184 (\$235 August 31, 2017) was paid or accrued to independent directors for directors' fees and services.
- (b) During the year ended August 31, 2018, the Company accrued or received payments of \$56 (\$55 August 31, 2017) from West Kirkland Mining Inc. ( **West Kirkland** ), a company with two directors in common, for accounting and administrative services. Amounts receivable at the end of the year include an amount of \$41 (\$28 August 31, 2017) due from West Kirkland.
- (c) On May 15, 2018 the Company closed a private placement for 15,090,999 units with Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited ( **HCI** ). Also on May 15, 2018, HCI participated for an additional 24,909,000 units in the Company's separate public offering. See Recent Equity Financings at item 3. A above for more details. By way of the private placement HCI acquired a right to nominate one person to the board of directors of the Company and a right to participate in future equity financings of the Company to maintain its pro-rata interest. As of July 5, 2018, including shares purchased on the open market, HCI owned approximately 15.07% of the Company's outstanding common shares.
- (d) During fiscal 2016 the Company entered into a loan facility agreement with its largest shareholder at the time, LMM. The loan was negotiated and entered into at commercial terms. LMM presently remains one of the Company's largest shareholders. For full details on this transaction please refer to Note 8 above.

All amounts receivable and accounts payable owing to or from related parties are non-interest bearing with no specific terms of repayment. These transactions are in the normal course of business and are recorded at consideration established and agreed to by the parties.

*Key Management Compensation*

The remuneration the CFO, CEO, COO and other key management personnel and the directors during the years ended August 31, 2018 to 2016 is as follows:

<b>Year ended</b>	<b>August 31, 2018</b>		<b>August 31, 2017</b>		<b>August 31, 2016</b>	
Salaries	\$	963	\$	1,093	\$	1,274
Directors fees		184		235		235
Share-based payments - management		13		396		72
Share-based payments - directors		12		504		61
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>1,172</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>2,228</b>	<b>\$</b>	<b>1,642</b>

25

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)****14. CONTINGENCIES AND COMMITMENTS**

The Company's remaining minimum payments under its office and equipment lease agreements in Canada and South Africa total approximately \$888 to August 31, 2020.

Contractor payments are based on approximate costs to complete services remaining at Waterberg.

From year end the Company's aggregate commitments are as follows:

	Payments Due By Year					Total
	< 1 Year	1 - 3 Years	4 - 5 Years	> 5 Years		
Lease Obligations	\$ 485	\$ 403	\$ -	\$ -	\$ -	888
Contractor payments	3,552	-	-	-	-	3,552
Convertible Note <sup>1</sup>	1,474	2,949	21,464	-	-	25,887
LMM Facility (Note 8)	-	54,746	-	-	-	54,746
<b>Totals</b>	<b>\$ 5,511</b>	<b>\$ 58,098</b>	<b>\$ 21,464</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>\$ -</b>	<b>85,073</b>

<sup>1</sup>The convertible note and related interest can be settled at the Company's discretion in cash or shares

The Company reports that it is in receipt of a summons issued by Africa Wide whereby Africa Wide has instituted legal proceedings in South Africa against PTM RSA, RBPlat and Maseve in relation to the Maseve Sale Transaction. Africa Wide is seeking, at this very late date, to set aside or be paid increased value for, the closed Maseve Sale Transaction. Africa Wide held a 17.1% interest in Maseve prior to the Maseve Sale Transaction. RBPlat consulted with senior counsel, both during the negotiation of the Maseve Sale Transaction and in regard to the current Africa Wide legal proceedings. The Company has received legal advice to the effect that the Africa Wide action, as issued, is ill-conceived and is factually and legally defective.

**15. SUPPLEMENTARY CASH FLOW INFORMATION**

Net change in non-cash working capital:

Year ended	August 31, 2018	August 31, 2017
Amounts receivable, prepaid expenses and other assets	\$ (42)	\$ 3,603
Accounts payable and accrued liabilities	3,007	(1,070)
	<b>\$ 2,965</b>	<b>\$ 2,533</b>

**16. SEGMENTED REPORTING**

Segmented information is provided on the basis of geographical segments as the Company manages its business and exploration activities through geographical regions - Canada, South Africa-Maseve, South Africa-Waterberg, South Africa-Other. The Company's other South African divisions that do not meet the quantitative thresholds of IFRS 8 Operating segments, are included in the segmental analysis under South Africa-Other. The Chief Operating Decision Makers ( CODM ) reviews information from the below segments separately so the below segments are separated. This represents a change from prior years and comparative information has been represented to reflect the way the CODM currently reviews the information

The Company evaluates performance of its operating and reportable segments as noted in the following table:



**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

<b>At August 31, 2018</b>		<b>Assets</b>		<b>Liabilities</b>	
Canada	\$	3,333	\$	58,396	
South Africa	Waterberg	29,406		1,575	
South Africa	Other	9,110		1,408	
	\$	<b>41,849</b>	\$	<b>61,379</b>	

<b>At August 31, 2017</b>		<b>Assets</b>		<b>Liabilities</b>	
Canada	\$	4,087	\$	109,379	
South Africa	Maseve	71,816		11,853	
South Africa	Waterberg	22,705		-	
South Africa	Other	1,920		2,562	
	\$	<b>100,528</b>	\$	<b>123,794</b>	

<b>Comprehensive Loss (Income) for the year ended</b>		<b>August 31, 2018</b>		<b>August 31, 2017</b>	
Canada	\$	23,401	\$	7,689	
South Africa	Maseve	11,932		536,019	
South Africa	Waterberg	-		-	
South Africa	Other	(16,186)		(12,423)	
	\$	<b>19,147</b>	\$	<b>531,285</b>	

**17. GENERAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES**

<b>GENERAL AND ADMINISTRATIVE EXPENSES</b>	<b>Year Ending August 31, 2018</b>	<b>Year Ending August 31, 2017</b>
Salaries and benefits	\$ 1,772	\$ 1,750
Professional/consulting fees	1,672	1,585
Onerous lease accrual	752	-
Depreciation	347	508
Rent	305	247
Insurance	373	273
Travel	255	307
Regulatory Fees	232	242
Accretion	-	159
Other	376	678
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 6,084</b>	<b>\$ 5,749</b>

**18. CAPITAL RISK MANAGEMENT**

The Company's objectives in managing its liquidity and capital are to safeguard the Company's ability to continue as a going concern and provide financial capacity to meet its strategic objectives. The capital structure of the Company consists of share capital, contributed surplus, accumulated other comprehensive loss and accumulated deficit.

The Company manages the capital structure and makes adjustments to it in light of changes in economic conditions and the risk characteristics of the underlying assets. To maintain or adjust the capital structure, the Company may issue new shares, issue new debt, acquire or dispose of assets.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

In order to facilitate the management of its capital requirements, the Company regularly updates the Board of Directors with regard to budgets, forecasts, results of capital deployment and general industry conditions. The Company does not currently declare or pay out dividends.

As at August 31, 2018, the Company is subject to externally imposed capital requirements under the LMM Facility. Please see Note 8 for further details.

**19. FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS AND RISK MANAGEMENT**

The Company examines the various financial risks to which it is exposed and assesses the impact and likelihood of occurrence. These risks may include credit risk, liquidity risk, currency risk, interest rate risk and other price risks.

*(a) Credit risk*

Credit risk arises from the risk that the financial asset counterparty, may default or not meet its obligations timeously. The Company minimizes credit risk by monitoring the reliability of counterparties to settle assets. The maximum exposure to the credit risk is represented by the carrying amount of all the financial assets. There is no material concentration of credit risk in cash and cash equivalents, trade and other receivables and loans.

*(i) Amounts receivable*

Total credit risk is limited to the carrying amount of amounts receivable.

*(ii) Cash and cash equivalents and restricted cash*

In order to manage credit and liquidity risk the Company invests only in term deposits with Canadian Chartered and South African banks that have maturities of three months or less.

*(iii) Performance Bonds*

In order to explore and develop its properties in South Africa, the Company was required to post performance bonds as financial guarantees against future reclamation work. These funds are held with Standard Bank of South Africa Limited with the DMR as beneficiary in accordance with the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (the **MPRDA** ) and the Company's environmental management programme.

*(b) Liquidity risk*

The Company has in place a planning and budgeting process to help determine the funds required to support the Company's normal operating requirements and its exploration and development plans. The Company regularly updates the Board of Directors with regard to budgets, forecasts, results of capital deployment and general industry conditions.

The Company may be required to source additional financing by way of private or public offerings of equity or debt or the sale of project or property interests in order to have sufficient cash to make debt repayments and working capital for continued exploration on the Waterberg Projects, as well as for general working capital purposes.

Any failure by the Company to obtain additional required financing on acceptable terms could cause the Company to delay development of its material projects or could result in the Company being forced to sell some of its assets on an untimely or unfavourable basis. Any such delay or sale could have a material and adverse effect on the Company's financial condition, results of operations and liquidity. Also refer to Note 1 for discussion of going concern risk.



**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)***(c) Currency risk*

The Company's functional currency is the Canadian dollar, while the consolidated presentation currency is the United States Dollar. The functional currency of all South African subsidiaries is the Rand. The Company's operations are in both Canada and South Africa; therefore, the Company's results are impacted by fluctuations in the value of foreign currencies in relation to the Canadian and United States dollar. The Company also held material USD denominated cash balances. The Company's significant foreign currency exposures on financial instruments comprise cash and cash equivalents, loans payable, convertible notes, accounts payable and accrued liabilities. The Company has not entered into any agreements or purchased any instruments to hedge possible currency risks at this time.

The Company is exposed to foreign exchange risk through the following financial instruments denominated in a currency other than Canadian dollars:

<b>Year ended</b>	<b>August 31, 2018</b>	<b>August 31, 2017</b>
Cash (Rand)	\$ 350	\$ 1,402
Cash (USD)	2,613	1,964
Accounts receivable (Rand)	802	1,479
Marketable Securities (Rand)	7,084	-
Accounts payable (Rand)	3,074	13,294
Loan Payable (USD)	39,465	90,126
Convertible Note (USD)	14,853	17,225

The Company's comprehensive loss is affected by changes in the exchange rate between its operating currencies and the United States dollar. At August 31, 2018, based on this exposure a 10% strengthening/weakening in the United States dollar versus Rand foreign exchange rate and Canadian dollar would give rise to a decrease/increase in net loss for the year presented of approximately \$6.8 million.

*(d) Interest rate risk*

The Company's interest income earned on cash and cash equivalents and on short term investments is exposed to interest rate risk. At August 31, 2017, based on this exposure a 1% change in the average interest rate would give rise to an increase/decrease in the net loss for the year of approximately \$4.

At August 31, 2017, the carrying amounts of cash and cash equivalents, amounts receivable, performance bonds and accounts payable and accrued liabilities are considered to be reasonable approximations of their fair values due to the short-term nature of these instruments.

**20. INCOME TAXES**

The income taxes shown in the consolidated earnings differ from the amounts obtained by applying statutory rates to the earnings before provision for income taxes due to the following:

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

	<b>2018</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Loss before income taxes	\$ 40,024	\$ 588,716	\$ 44,145
Income tax recovery at statutory rates	(10,941)	(153,066)	(11,478)
Difference of foreign tax rates	(231)	(11,774)	(766)
Non-deductible expenses and non-taxable portion of capital gains	358	158,059	44
Changes in unrecognized deferred tax assets and other	10,814	8,436	4,706
Income tax expense (recovery)	-	1,655	(7,494)
Income tax expense (recovery) consists of:			
Current income taxes	\$ -	\$ -	-
Deferred income taxes	-	1,655	(7,494)
	\$ -	\$ 1,655	\$ (7,494)

The gross movement on the net deferred income tax account is as follows:

	<b>2018</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Deferred tax liability at the beginning of the year	\$ -	\$ -	(6,317)
Tax recovery relating to the loss (income) from continuing operations	(15,527)	(1,655)	7,494
Tax (expense) recovery relating to components of other comprehensive income	-	1,655	(1,177)
Tax (expense) recovery recorded in deficit	15,527	-	-
Deferred tax liability at the end of the year	\$ -	\$ -	-

The tax effects of \$15,717 related to taxable Waterberg transactions in South Africa, offset by tax deductible items and previously unrecognized assessed tax losses.

The significant components of the Company's net deferred income tax liabilities are as follows:

	<b>2018</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
Mineral properties	\$ (2,434)	(4,635)	(19,692)
	\$		
Loss carry forwards	2,434	4,635	19,692
	\$ -	\$ -	-

Unrecognized deductible temporary differences, unused tax losses and unused tax credits are attributed to the following:

	<b>2018</b>	<b>2017</b>	<b>2016</b>
<u>Tax Losses:</u>			
Operating loss carry forwards	Canada \$ 106,058	\$ 85,898	\$ 60,950
Operating loss carry forwards	South Africa 23,026	204,500	77,069
Net capital loss carry forwards	621	-	1,559

Edgar Filing: PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD - Form 20-F

\$ 129,705 \$ 290,398 \$ 139,578

Temporary Differences:

Mineral properties	\$ 7,664	\$ 305,515	\$ 7,628
Financing Costs	18,831	16,481	13,930
Property, plant and equipment	735	692	594
Other	254	368	329
	\$ 27,484	\$ 323,056	\$ 22,481

Investment Tax Credits:

\$ 318 \$ 331 \$ 317

The Company's Canadian operating loss carry-forwards expire between 2026 and 2037. The Company's South African operating loss carry-forwards do not expire. The Company's Canadian unused investment tax credit carry-forwards expire between 2029 and 2035. The Company's Canadian net capital loss carry-forwards do not expire.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

Notes to the consolidated financial statements

For the year ended August 31, 2018

**(In thousands of United States Dollars unless otherwise noted)**

**21. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS**

On November 20, 2018 the Company announced a consolidation of its common shares on the basis of one new share for ten old shares (1:10), effective at 9:00 a.m. (New York time) on December 13, 2018. The Company's consolidated common shares are expected to begin trading on the Toronto Stock Exchange and NYSE American when the markets open on December 17, 2018. The purpose of the consolidation is to increase the Company's common share price to be in compliance with the NYSE American's low selling price requirement.

31

---

**ITEM 19. EXHIBITS**

See EXHIBIT INDEX, below.

---

**SIGNATURES**

The registrant hereby certifies that it meets all of the requirements for filing on Form 20-F and that it has duly caused and authorized the undersigned to sign this annual report on its behalf.

**PLATINUM GROUP METALS LTD.**

(Registrant)

Date: November 29, 2018

By:

/s/ Frank R. Hallam  
Frank R. Hallam  
Chief Financial Officer

---

**EXHIBIT INDEX**

<b>Exhibit Number</b>	<b>Description</b>
<u>1.1</u>	<u>Articles of the Company, as amended and consolidated on February 27, 2014 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 1.1 to the Form 20-F filed on December 29, 2017)</u>
<u>2.1</u>	<u>Shareholder Rights Plan Agreement (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 2.1 to the Form 8-A filed on July 11, 2012)</u>
<u>4.1</u>	<u>Incentive Stock Option Plan, as amended (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 4.1 to the Form 20-F filed on December 29, 2017)</u>
<u>4.2</u>	<u>Share Compensation Plan (previously filed by the Company as Schedule B to Exhibit 99.1 to the Form 6-K filed on January 17, 2017)</u>
<u>4.3</u>	<u>LMM Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement dated February 12, 2018 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 99.3 to the Form 6-K filed on February 20, 2018)</u>
<u>4.4</u>	<u>LMM First Modification Agreement to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement dated February 28, 2018</u>
<u>4.5</u>	<u>LMM Second Modification Agreement to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement dated May 1, 2018 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 99.2 to the Form 6-K filed on May 14, 2018)</u>
<u>4.6</u>	<u>LMM Third Modification Agreement to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement dated May 10, 2018</u>
<u>4.7</u>	<u>LMM Fourth Modification Agreement to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement dated August 21, 2018</u>
<u>4.8</u>	<u>LMM Fifth Modification Agreement to the Second Amended and Restated Credit Agreement October 18, 2018</u>
<u>4.9</u>	<u>LMM Production Payment Agreement Termination Agreement dated October 30, 2017 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 4.9 to the Form 20-F filed on December 29, 2017)</u>
<u>4.10</u>	<u>LMM Production Payment Agreement Termination Agreement Modification Agreement dated February 12, 2018</u>
<u>4.11</u>	<u>Convertible Notes Indenture dated June 30, 2017 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 99.1 to the Form 6-K filed on July 5, 2017)</u>
<u>4.12</u>	<u>Supplement No. 1 to Convertible Notes Indenture dated January 31, 2018</u>
<u>4.13</u>	<u>HCI Amended and Restated Subscription Agreement dated May 10, 2018 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 99.1 to the Form 6-K filed on May 14, 2018)</u>
<u>4.14</u>	<u>Warrant Indenture dated May 15, 2018 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 99.1 to the Form 6-K filed on May 15, 2018)</u>
<u>4.15</u>	<u>Impala Share Purchase Agreement dated October 16, 2017 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 4.11 to the Form 20-F filed on December 29, 2017)</u>
<u>8.1</u>	<u>List of Subsidiaries (included under Item 4.C. of this Form 20-F)</u>
<u>12.1</u>	<u>Certification of Chief Executive Officer</u>
<u>12.2</u>	<u>Certification of Chief Financial Officer</u>

<a href="#"><u>13.1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Certification of Chief Executive Officer</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>13.2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Certification of Chief Financial Officer</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>15.1</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Technical Report On The Mineral Resource Update For The Waterberg Project Located In The Bushveld Igneous Complex, South Africa, dated October 22, 2018 (previously filed by the Company as Exhibit 99.1 to the Form 6-K filed on November 19, 2018)</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>15.2</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Consent of PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>15.3</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>Consent of Charles J. Muller</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>101.INS</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>XBRL Instance Document</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>101.SCH</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>XBRL Taxonomy Extension Schema</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>101.CAL</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>XBRL Taxonomy Extension Calculation Linkbase</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>101.DEF</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>XBRL Taxonomy Extension Definition Linkbase</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>101.LAB</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>XBRL Taxonomy Extension Label Linkbase</u></a>
<a href="#"><u>101.PRE</u></a>	<a href="#"><u>XBRL Taxonomy Extension Presentation Linkbase</u></a>

---